# A HIGH POWER WIDE BANDWIDTII SWITCHMODE AMPLIRIRR 

FRANK M. FIMDHES:


# A HIGH POWER WIDE BANDWIDTH SWITCH MODE AMPLIFIER 

FRANK M. FLINDERS B.Eng

Dissertation submitted in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of Master of Engineering

University of Central Queensland James Goldston Faculty of Engineering Department of Electrical Engineering

1 March 1993


## T1001106821

```
COMPUTER LOAN
```


## CONFIRMATION OF DEPOSITION

(to be appended to thesis on submission of hard bound copy to the University Library)

PART A (Candidate to complete. Please print in black ink)

```
Candidate's Name: Fr`.t.lir.l.
Degree: Nu.......\ 1..j
```

 190 (1)

## PART B (Office Use Only)

As at the date recorded below and in keeping with the Requirements for the Submission Presentation and Deposition of Research Theses, the thesis described above has been deposited in the University Library.

## Signature Redacted

$\qquad$

## A HIGH POWER WIDE BANDWIDTH SWITCH MODE AMPLIFIER.


#### Abstract

This thesis describes the development of a $45 \mathrm{kVA}, 20 \mathrm{kHz}$ bandwidth switching amplifier. The amplifier is a subsection of a controlled source audiomagnetelluric (AMT) system primarily aimed at exploration of mineral deposits and geophysical deposits associated with oil and gas fields. However this amplifier has applications in many other areas.


A number of design innovations contributing to the body of knowledge in power electronics were implemented in the course of the development of the AMT amplifier. In particular, a new bridge inverter topology has been developed which supports five level pulsewidth modulation with only four switches. In the past eight switches have been required to achieve the same result. The five level modulation has allowed extension of the bandwidth and improvement in the output quality of the amplifier without increase in the switch frequency.

The new bridge topology consists of four buck converter sub units coupled by transformers. The buck converters supply a maximum current of 100 A from a 560 V nominal bus and switch at 50 kHz . Each buck converter employs an Insulated Gate Bipolar Transistor and high speed power diodes together with a regenerative snubbing and clamp system to achieve this high power frequency product. New techniques have been developed to accurately predict diode reverse recovery performance during of the buck converter design process.

The new converter topology requires a specialised control system. The design of this control system, as well as important design rules developed during the project, are presented.

Computer simulation studies have been extensively used in the design of both the buck converters and the control system. This design approach has resulted in a significant reduction in time consuming prototype modifications.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

ABSTRACT ..... i
FIGURE LIST ..... vi
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS ..... x
DECLARATION ..... xi
PUBLICATIONS ..... xii

1. INTRODUCTION ..... 1
2. CONVERTER TOPOLOGY ..... 11
2.1 Conventional Converter Topologies ..... 11
2.2 Multilevel Modulation ..... 16
2.3 The New Five Level Converter Topology ..... 28
2.4 Coupling Transformer Selection ..... 31
2.5 Buck Converter Cell Topology ..... 35
3. POWER DEVICE MODELING ..... 43
3.1 Power Diode Physics ..... 43
3.2 Power Diode Turn Off Characteristics ..... 50
3.3 Power Diode Turn On Characteristics ..... 77
3.4 Power Diode Forward Conduction Characteristics ..... 84
3.5 IGBT Characteristics ..... 85
3.6 IGBT Conduction Power Loss ..... 87
3.7 IGBT Switching Power Loss ..... 88
4. POWER CIRCUIT DESIGN
4.1 General Considerations ..... 97
4.2 Selection of the Snubber Capacitor and Commutating Inductor ..... 98
4.3 Snubber Module Design ..... 120
4.4 Clamping System Design ..... 135
4.5 Freewheel Diode Module Design ..... 142
4.6 IGBT Module Design ..... 155
4.7 Determination of the Cooling Requirement ..... 164
4.8 Buck Converter Experimental Results ..... 170
5. CONTROLLER OPERATION AND DESIGN
5.1 Control Strategy ..... 177
5.2 Phase/Ramp Generator Operation ..... 184
5.3 Bias Current Control Operation ..... 194
5.4 Output Current Control Operation ..... 196
5.5 Current Limiter Operation ..... 202
5.6 Control Systems Design ..... 204
6. SIMULATION AND SCALE MODEL TEST RESULTS ..... 227
6.1 Simulation Technique ..... 227
6.2 Small Scale Model and Simulation Results ..... 230
7. CONCLUSIONS ..... 241
8. REFERENCES ..... 244
APPENDIX A. SOI SPICE MODEL ..... 250
APPENDIX B. SELECTION OF RESISTOR $R_{f}$ ..... 253
APPENDIX C. DIODE $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{f}}$ REVERSE RECOVERY CALCULATION ..... 256
APPENDIX D. DRIVE CARD SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM ..... 258
APPENDIX E. SPICE MODEL OF DRIVE CARD ..... 259
APPENDIX F. DIODE $D_{c}$ REVERSE RECOVERY CALCULATION ..... 262
APPENDIX G. AMPLIFIER PHOTOGRAPHS ..... 263

## FIGURE LIST

Page
Figure 2.1 Cuk Converter Operation ..... 13
Figure $2.2 \quad$ Bridge Inverter Modulation Techniques ..... 15
Figure 2.3 Conventional Five Level Topologies ..... 17
Figure 2.4 Five Level Modulation Waveform ..... 18
Figure $2.5 \quad$ Two, Three and Five Level Switching ..... 19
Strategy Comparison
Figure 2.6 Current Ripple Improvement of 5 Level Over ..... 21
2 Level Modulation as a Function of Duty Ratio
Figure 2.7 Current Ripple Improvement of 5 Level Over ..... 22
3 Level Modulation as a Function of Duty Ratio
Figure 2.8 Five Level Modulation Simulation "TUTSIM" ..... 24 Model
Figure 2.9 Five Level Modulation Simulation Results ..... 25 (Load Voltage and Current)
Figure 2.10
Five Level Modulation Similation Voltage
Five Level Modulation Similation Voltage ..... 26 ..... 26 Spectrum
Figure 2.11 Five Level Modulation Simulation Load ..... 27 Current Spectrum
Figure 2.12 New Five Level Inverter Topology ..... 29
Figure 2.13 The Effect of Bias Current Control on ..... 33 the Modulation Integrity
Figure 2.14 Simplified Positive Buck Converter Cell ..... 36
Figure 2.15 Positive Buck Converter Cell Waveforms ..... 40
Figure 3.1 Reverse and Forward Bias Carrier ..... 45 Densities
Figure 3.2 Power Diode Reverse Recovery Transient ..... 51
Figure 3.3 Spice Simulation of Reverse Recovery ..... 56
Figure 3.4 Minority Carrier Life Time according to ..... 61 SPICE using Manufacturers Data
Figure 3.5 Determination of $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}$ according to SPICE ..... 63
Figure 3.6 Excess Minority Carrier Concentration ..... 65 during Reverse Recovery
Figure 3.7 Minority Carrier Lifetime according to ..... 70
Modified Model using Manufacturer's Data
Figure 3.8 Determination of $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}$ using Modified Model ..... 71
Table 3.1 Power Diode Reverse Recovery Lookup Table ..... 72
Figure 3.9 Commercial Diode Verses Model Comparison ..... 73
Figure 3.10 Typical Diode Forward Recovery Transient ..... 78
Figure 3.11 Circuit Effects of Diode Forward Recovery ..... 81
Figure 3.12 Insulated Gate $\mathrm{Bi}-\mathrm{Polor}$ Transistor ..... 86 Operation
Figure 3.13 IGBT Collector Emitter Voltage Waveform ..... 90
Figure 4.1 Simplified Positive Buck Converter Cell ..... 96
Figure 4.2 Snubber and Clamp Operational Sequence ..... 99
Figure 4.3 Snubber and Clamp Waveforms ..... 100
Figure 4.4 Effect of $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ on the Total IGBT to $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{f}}$ ..... 109 Diversion Time
Table 4.1 Diode $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{S}}$ Junction Temperature for $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ ..... 113Equal to $0.03_{1} 0.05$ and $0.07 \mu \mathrm{~F}$
Figure 4.5 Effect of $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$ on the Total IGBT to $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{f}}$ ..... 114
Diversion Time
Figure $4.6 \quad$ Effect of the Bus Voltage on the Total ..... 116 IGBT to $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{f}}$ Diversion Time
Figure 4.7 Snubber Module Schematic ..... 121
Figure 4.8 Resonant Reversal Operation ..... 122
Figure 4.9 Snubber Resonant Reversal Waveforms ..... 123
Figure 4.10 Clamp Module Schematic ..... 136
Figure 4.11 500 Watt Self Oscillating Inverter ..... 137 Schematic
Figure 4.12 SOI Efficiency as a Function of Input ..... 141 Current
Figure 4.13 Freewheel Diode Module Schematic ..... 143
Figure 4.14 Voltage Clamping Action of $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{x}}$ and $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{x}}$ ..... 148
Figure 4.15 Gate Driver Block Diagram ..... 156
Figure 4.16 Predicted IGBT Voltage and Current during ..... 160 Turn On
Table 4.2 IGBT Turn On Power Dissipation Spreadsheet ..... 162
Figure 4.17 Actual IGBT Collector Emitter Voltage ..... 173 (40A load)Figure 4.18
IGBT Collector Emitter Voltage (75A load) ..... 174
Figure 4.19 Freewheel Diode Anode Cathode Voltage ..... 175
Figure 4.20 Diode $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{s}}$ Anode Cathode Voltage ..... 176
Figure 5.1 Amplifier Controller Simplified Block ..... 178
Diagram
Figure 5.2 Amplifier Bridge Inverter ..... 180
Figure 5.3 Controller System Overview ..... 183
Figure 5.4 Controller Detailed Block Diagram Part "A" ..... 185
Figure 5.5 Controller Detailed Block Diagram Part "B" ..... 187
Figure 5.6 Phase Generator Schematic Diagram ..... 188
Figure 5.7 Phase Generator Logic Operation ..... 191
Figure 5.8 Ramp Generator Analog Operation ..... 192
Figure 5.9 Scale Model Operation during Frequency ..... 200 Dropping Part "A"
Figure 5.10 Scale Model Operation during Frequency ..... 201 Dropping Part "B"
Figure 5.11 Scale Model Current Limited Operation ..... 203
Figure 5.12 Amplifier Control System Block Diagram ..... 205
Figure 5.13 Bias Current Control Loop Operation ..... 210
Figure 5.14 Bias Current Control Loop Open Loop Bode ..... 216 Plot
Figure 5.15 Output Current Control Loop Pole/Zero Map ..... 219 Part "A"
Figure 5.16
Output Current Control Loop Pole/Zero Map
Output Current Control Loop Pole/Zero Map ..... 220 ..... 220 Part "B"
Figure 5.17 Output Current Control Loop Step Response ..... 223
Figure 5.18 Output Current Control Open Loop Bode Plots ..... 244 for Three Typical Loads
Figure 6.1
"TUTSIM" Model of the Bridge Inverter229
Figure 6.2 "TUTSIM" Model of the Analog Control ..... 231 Section
Figure 6.3 Simulated and Scale Model Output Voltage ..... 233
for 10 kHz Modulation
Table 6.1 Output Voltage Spectrum ..... 234
Figure 6.4 Scale Model Output Current for 10 KHz ..... 235 Modulation
Figure $6.5 \quad$ Simulated and Scale Model Operation; ..... 236 $1 \mathrm{kHz}, 56 \mathrm{~A}_{\text {rms }}, 1.5+2 \mathrm{j}$ Load
Figure $6.6 \quad$ Simulated and Scale Model Frequency ..... 238
Dropping Mode; $1 \mathrm{kHz}, 40 \mathrm{~A}_{\text {rms }}, 3+3 \mathrm{j}$ Load
Figure 6.7 Scale Model Closed Loop Response; 5 ohm, ..... 239 $500 \mu \mathrm{H}$ Load
Figure 6.8 Scale Model Output Current Spectrum; 1 kHz , ..... 240 $5 \mathrm{~A}_{\text {rms }}, 3+3 \mathrm{j}$ Load
Figure A1 SOI Spice Model Schematic Diagram ..... 252
Figure B1 Parallel Diode Current Balance ..... 253
Figure D1 IGBT Driver Card Schematic Diagram ..... 257
Figure E1 IGBT Drive Module Spice Model Schematic Diagram ..... 261
Figure G1 Positive Buck Converter Module ..... 263 (Photograph)
Figure G2 IGBT Gate Drive Module (Photograph) ..... 264
Figure G3 Self Oscillating Converter Module (Photograph) ..... 265
Figure G4 Buck Converter Test Installation and Loading Bank (Photograph) ..... 266
Figure G5 Scale Model Test Installation and Controller PCB (Photograph) ..... 267
Figure G6 The Amplifier during the Construction Phase (Photograph) ..... 268
Figure G7 The Amplifier during the Construction Phase (Photograph) ..... 269

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I wish to express my thanks to the staff of the Electrical Engineering Department at the University of Central Queensland for their support over the duration of this project. In particular I wish to acknowledge the contributions of my supervisors Dr. Peter Wolfs and Dr. Ken Kwong and the significant efforts made by Mr. Ken Best, Mr.Mike Gorman and the other technical staff of the Department.

## DECLARATION

The work contained in this thesis has not been previously submitted for a degree or diploma at any tertiary education institution. To the best of my knowledge this thesis contains no material previously published by another person except where due reference is made.

## Signature Redacted

## Frank Flinders.

## PUBLICATIONS

The following publications have been produced during the course of this thesis
(i) P.J.Wolfs, F.M.Flinders, "An Improved Phase Leg", Australian Provisional Patent Specification No PK7430, $26^{\text {th }}$ July 1991.
(ii) F.M. Flinders, P.J.Wolfs and K.Kwong, "An Improved Modulation Capability Inverter", Conference on Industrial Drives, University of Central Queensland, $18^{\text {th }}-20^{\text {th }}$ September 1991, pp 273-277.
(iii) F.M. Flinders, P.J.Wolfs and K.Kwong, "Prediction of Diode Reverse Recovery from Limited Data", AUPCEC 1992 Conference, Queensland University of Technology, $1^{\text {st }}-2^{\text {nd }}$ October 1992, pp 414-419.
(iv) F.M. Flinders, P.J. Wolfs, K.Kwong, "Improved techniques for Switching Power Amplifiers", James Goldstone School of Engineering Research Report Series, No. EE5, June 1992.
(v) F.M. Flinders, P.J. Wolfs, "A Charge Control Equation Based Method for Predicting Power Diode Reverse Recovery Behaviour", James Goldstone School of Engineering Research Report Series, No. EE6, August 1992.

Additionally the following paper has been accepted for publication in the IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics.
(vi) F.M.Flinders, P.J.Wolfs, K.Kwong, "Improved Techniques for Switching Amplifiers", IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics, Log No. \#C182-HP-21, April 1992, accepted January 1993.

## 1. INTRODUCTION

This thesis covers the development of a $45 \mathrm{kVA}, 0-20 \mathrm{kHz}$ audio frequency switching amplifier. The project was supported by part of a NERDEC grant made to the University of Queensland for the development of a controlled source audiomagnetelluric, (CSAMT), system for geophysical exploration. The system is primarily targeted at economically exploitable mineral deposits and geophysical deposits associated with oil and gas fields, [1]. In the audiomagnetelluric system the region of earth of interest is illuminated using an artificial electromagnetic source. The surface electric and magnetic fields are measured at a distance in three orthogonal directions and the results recorded as impedances. The variation of input impedance with frequency is then used to construct a model for the depth resistivity structure. The nature of the underlying mineral deposits can be interpreted from this data.

The amplifier forms the artificial source in the system. The output current from the amplifier can be passed directly through the earth via two stakes. Alteratively the source can be coupled via a large diameter magnetic loop laid over the ground. The 45 kVA switching amplifier is at present being constructed at the University of Central Queensland.

Although this amplifier was developed for a specific task its application is more broad ranging. Because the output waveform is of high quality up to a frequency of 10 kHz it would be suitable as a modulator for shortwave and medium wave AM radio transmitters. Another important application is a source for driving electromagnetically driven shakers and vibrating tables. Because the output distortion is low the unit would also be ideal as a high power bass amplifier. It is also likely that the amplifier would be useful as standard equipment in scientific laboratories for conducting various physical experiments, [2].

In addition to the many applications for this amplifier there has also been several innovative techniques developed which will contribute to improvement of technology in other areas. The power circuit topology uses only four switches to provide five level modulation capability. Previously this could only be obtained with the use of eight switches requiring either two standard single phase bridges or the neutral point clamped, (NPC), configuration, [2-5]. Within the new topology greater utilisation of each switch is achieved by the use of a coupling transformer in each phase leg. The power circuit consists of four independent buck converters. This new topology is believed to be a new concept and is the subject of a patent application, [6]. The topology could be employed in three phase variable speed motor drives. By appropriate phase shifting of the modulation carriers the switch frequency component can be eliminated from the output spectrum, [7]. This could be of great importance in multi-megawatt drives where switching frequencies are normally less than 500 Hz . Another very significant advantage of the new topology is that the shoot through fault which can occur in standard phase legs is eliminated. The coupling transformer together with the control system prevents any uncontrolled shoot through current from occurring. This will prove to be a very large benefit in the high power motor drive area.

In 1987 a 15 kVA amplifier was developed for the same application by the University of Queenslands Physics Department, [1]. It was based upon a pulsewidth modulated bridge inverter supplied from a 560 Vdc nominal bus. The inverter switching elements operated at a frequency of 20 kHz . A uni-polar pulsewidth modulation scheme was adopted. This produces three distinct output levels and an effective output switching frequency of 40 kHz . After extensive field testing this amplifier was shown to be deficient in several areas for the CSAMT application. The output current available proved inadequate in some situations. The need existed to increase the rating from 15 kVA to 45 kVA . Although the amplifier was capable of reproducing signals up to 10 kHz the waveform quality and control performance was poor.

Only low open loop gains are possible near 10 kHz . At higher gains the 40 kHz output switching frequency ripple component caused erratic behavior of the modulator. An open loop bandwidth of 20 kHz would be necessary to obtain adequate control loop performance at 10 kHz .

To obtain the performance levels desired the second generation amplifier would require a substantial increase in the power frequency product over the original unit. Meanwhile, semiconductor technology has advanced considerably over the last five years. However, analysis showed that the increased performance of the semiconductor devices alone could not provide the required power frequency product. This lead to the development of a new inverter topology. This new topology allows a five level modulation strategy to be implemented, extending the maximum bandwidth and reducing the output peak to peak ripple current amplitude. The output ripple frequency becomes four times the device switching frequency.

With the new topology a device switching frequency of 50 kHz was required to obtain the necessary control bandwidth. The power devices used were 200A 1200 V Insulated Gate Bipolar Transistors (IGBT's), [8]. These devices represent state of the art power switching semiconductor technology at the time of the project. However at a switch frequency of 50 kHz , snubbing to reduce switching power loss, was a necessity.

The snubbing system chosen is an innovative combination of several published techniques, $[9],[10-14]$. Each buck converter has a self contained snubbing system. The design of this buck converter with snubbing system to obtain optimum overall results is a complex task, [15], requiring a number of iterative steps. Factors such as overall power loss, individual device power loss, device temperature rise, device maximum current/voltage stress and circuit complexity must all be considered. High power converters require considerable effort at the design stage.

Design errors in high power converters, unlike low power converters, are expensive to correct. Extensive use of the software package PSPICE, [16], was made to verify device current and voltage stresses prior to construction of the prototype. Very few problems were encountered in the full scale buck converter prototype.

The content of each chapter will now be described briefly.

Chapter Two of this report focuses on the new converter topology. It begins by reviewing conventional techniques used to construct switching amplifiers, [17],[1-2]. The suitability of each for this application is discussed. A detailed comparison of two, three and five level modulation schemes is presented. A TUTSIM simulation of a five level scheme was conducted to obtain the voltage and current output spectrum, [18]. The simulation shows that components at the switch frequency and two times the switch frequency can be eliminated. Spectral components are found to be centered around a 200 kHz suppressed carrier at intervals of the modulation frequency for a 50 kHz switch frequency. The operation of the new converter topology offering the capability of five level modulation is discussed in detail. Important converter design rules such as those relating to the coupling transformers are developed.

Because this converter is new, a new set of control strategies need to be developed. To maintain the five level modulation properly all buck converters must always remain in conduction. In addition to regulating the output current the controller must maintain conduction in all buck converters. Each buck converter consists of the main switching device and freewheel diode assembly plus associated snubbers. Because of the converter's high power rating and high operating frequency the snubbers are a significant system component. The buck converter employs both resonant reversing lossless snubbers and a voltage clamping system for the IGBT. The clamping system uses a pair of 500 watt self oscillating inverters, (SOI's), to return energy to the dc supply.

The choice of topology and operation of the Buck converters is thoroughly discussed and includes a set of typical system waveforms.

The third chapter presents a detailed study of the power semiconductors employed in the converter. A full understanding of the semiconductor device characteristics is fundamental to a good converter design. While it is possible to design and develop low power converters with little knowledge of semiconductor properties, this luxury can not be afforded at high powers and high switch frequencies. In large converters semiconductor performance dictates physical construction and layout. Therefore modifications due to unexpected variations in semiconductor performance are not easily accommodated in the prototyping stage. The key to a successful design is an accurate assessment of semiconductor performance in the design stage.

The converter uses a large number of high current high speed diodes. Because of the high switching frequency these diodes must have good reverse recovery characteristics. Where possible it was decided to standardise on one type of diode. After an extensive review of the latest manufacturers' data books the diode chosen was a 1000 V 60 A (DSE1-60-10A) device which was a new release by ABB-IXYS, [19-22]. The reverse recovery data indicated that this diode was significantly better than any similar rated device that was reviewed. However only data for one operating condition was available. The four major parameters that affect the reverse recovery performance are the forward current prior to commutation, the commutation $\mathrm{dI} / \mathrm{dt}$, junction temperature, and minority carrier life time. While the former three are essentially a function of the converter design the latter is a characteristic of the diode. In this case a reverse maximum current of 32 A was specified for a forward current of 60 A , commutation $\mathrm{dI} / \mathrm{dt}$ of $480 \mathrm{~A} / \mu \mathrm{S}$ and a junction temperature of $100^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. To be able to accurately design the converter it was necessary to know the reverse recovery current at significantly different operating conditions to those given.

Thus, it was considered essential that an accurate method of determining diode reverse recovery current be found. Review of the literature indicated that the most common method of approaching this problem was by formulation of models and subsequent simulation, [23-26]. While this yields good simulation results it is not a closed solution and thus inadequate for the design purpose. As part of this thesis relationships for the reverse maximum current are derived. The relationships are based on the charge control model of the $\mathrm{P}-\mathrm{N}$ junction, [27-29]. Implicit equations that allow the calculation of the minority carrier lifetime from manufacturers data and then use this parameter to determine the reverse maximum current at other operating points have been developed. These equations are presented graphically and in lookup table form. When applied to diodes with comprehensive data a good match between predicted and actual characteristics has been found. The procedure though based on well known theory is presented in a unique and efficacious form for use in general power electronics design. The calculation of the minority carrier lifetime also allows an unbiased comparison of diode reverse recovery performance between devices from competing manufacturers. This new technique is believed to be a valuable tool to the power electronics designer, [30].

Another diode characteristic which is less widely documented but is of significant importance in large high frequency converters is transient forward recovery, [ $24,29,31]$. In this case at high application rates of forward current the forward voltage exceeds its normal steady state level. In some cases the transient voltage may be greater than 50 V . Because this overshoot voltage normally causes stress on other semiconductor devices it becomes an important design consideration. Section 3.3 is devoted to the discussion of the forward recovery process, its effect and estimation in various sections of the converter. The main switching device in the power circuit is a Toshiba MG200Q1US1 IGBT, [8]. Sections 3.5, 3.6 and 3.7 are devoted to a discussion of its characteristics, and method of calculation of its power loss.

Chapter Four gives a detailed description of the power circuit design, which is a long iterative task because of the complex interdependence of component values. Rather than presenting the full design process the selected values for the major components are presented and the choice in terms of worst case junction temperature, current stress or voltage stress is verified. The selection of each major component in each module is examined. Throughout the design extensive use is made of the results from Chapter Three with respect to diode reverse recovery. Two important components are the main snubber capacitor, $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$, and the dI/dt limiting inductor, $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$. These two components to a large extent govern the design of most of the remainder of the converter. Their selection is a complex task involving many variables with many iterative steps. In particular, the following factors must be considered: Main and auxiliary semiconductor device power loss, current stress and voltage stress; overall power loss and converter efficiency; IGBT minimum on and off times. Previous research has been found to focus primarily on optimisation of the overall IGBT switch and snubber efficiency., [15]. The choice of components a dictated by these other constraints is discussed in Chapter Four.

Chapter Four also describes the IGBT gate drive system. The design uses one gate drive module for each IGBT. These modules are electrically isolated from the control circuit. The control signals from the main control board are isolated by fiber optic links. Power is supplied at 100 kHz from a switch-mode power supply via transformers. This approach eliminates disturbance to the main controller due to coupled electrical interference from the power circuit. The design of well isolated, interference tolerant drivers is considered mandatory in high power, high frequency converters. The gate drive circuit also provides complete IGBT protection independent of the action of the main control system. The design philosophy adopted was to use all discrete circuitry operating at high current levels.

The design and operation of the clamping system SOI is also discussed. These SOI's use mosfets with a special driving circuit rather than the traditional bipolar transistor as the switching devices. The self oscillation is generated by the partial saturation of an auxiliary transformer, [12]. This results in greater efficiency in comparison with the more common approach of using main transformer saturation. At the close of Chapter Four the overall power loss is calculated at the rated output current of 100 A with a $50 \%$ duty ratio with nominal bus voltage of 560 V . This is used to calculate the cooling requirements.

A full rating prototype buck converter was constructed to verify the design. The test results from this converter are presented in section 4.8. The measured efficiency figures were found to contain a large tolerance because of the limited accuracy of the measurement equipment. In terms of component and heatsink temperature rises the performance of the converter was found to be adequate and in reasonable agreement with the design values.

Chapter Five describes the control system operation and design. Because the converter topology is new, unique control strategies were developed. To obtain the five level PWM feature a four phase symmetrical ramp generator has been implemented. Each phase is responsible for generating the PWM signals for one buck converter. Multiple phase PWM has been applied in DC power supplies to reduce input and output ripple current, but does not appear to be well known to inverter designers, [32]. The techniques developed for this inverter could with some adaptation be applied to the neutral point clamped topology. Further research is being conducted into this technique. To maintain the five level modulation all buck converters must remain in conduction. This is equivalent to maintaining a bias current flowing down each leg. To achieve this the coupling transformer magnetising current must always be maintained above one half the output current.

A control loop which senses and regulates the bias current via manipulation of the coupling transformer magnetising current has been implemented. A second control loop senses and regulates the inverter output current. Due to the IGBT minimum on and off time constraints the inverter output voltage saturates at $75 \%$ of the bus voltage. This represents a severe restriction which traditionally has been a problem with high switching frequency converters. It has been overcome in this design by the use of a frequency dropping strategy. Once the minimum off or on time constraint is reached the control action is diverted to linearly reducing the frequency. The result is that the duty ratio, and hence the average output voltage, continues to increase. Using this technique the five level modulation properties are maintained. The resulting ripple current is kept low. The performance of this system has been found to be exceptionally good. It is believed that this innovative technique will be of significant benefit in variable speed motor drive systems.

The chapter develops the relevant design methods and analysis for the new control system. This includes derivation of equations which describe the interaction between control loops. Control loop performance verification was also carried out using the "MATLAB" mathematical analysis package, [33]. The results of the analysis are used to size system components and set parameters.

Detailed simulation of the combined controller and power circuit was carried out using the dynamic systems analysis package "TUTSIM", [18]. The model was constructed so that on a functional level it would resemble closely the hardware design. The purpose was twofold, first it was used to verify the predicted performance, secondly because of the model's detail it was effectively a pre-hardware prototype. Using this procedure labor intensive hardware redesign is avoided. In a large converter it is not practical nor advisable to debug the control system using the full scale power circuit.

A tenth scale model of the power circuit was designed and constructed for the purposes of debugging and tuning the control system. The controller sends and receives signals identical to those in the full scale unit. Chapter Six is devoted to the presentation of results of the "TUTSIM" simulation and the tenth scale model. The very good agreement of the two serves to illustrate the power of systems level simulation. The use of dynamic systems packages for simulation of power electronic systems appears to be under exploited. Using the ideas developed as a part of this project there is great potential for further work in this area. The scale model and simulation results verify the predicted operational characteristics. The output waveform quality up to a modulating frequency of 1 kHz is exceptionally good with the total harmonic distortion being less than $0.35 \%$. Performance between 1 and 10 kHz deteriorates with increasing frequency but is still more than adequate for the application.

At this time the full scale amplifier power circuit is not complete. However few difficulties are expected during the commissioning stage because of the methodical design and subsequent verification procedures that have been followed.

## 2. CONVERTER TOPOLOGY

This chapter focuses on the new five level converter topology. It begins with a review of known techniques which have been used to construct switching amplifiers. These include the Cuk converter, standard bridge inverter, neutral point clamped inverter and multiple bridge inverter configurations. The suitability of these approaches in relation to the CSAMT application is discussed. In terms of extending bandwidth and improvement of waveform quality multilevel PWM schemes are of benefit in switching amplifier applications. A detailed comparison of two, three and five level schemes is presented. The five level modulation system is simulated with the results being presented. The new five level converter topology uses four switches compared with traditional inverter configurations which require eight. Better switch utilisation is obtained by the use of four buck converters linked by two coupling transformers. The operation and important design parameters of the new topology are discussed.

The buck converter snubbing system topology and operation are also described. The main switch snubbing system is a resonant reversing lossless configuration combined with an active clamp. The snubbing system design equations together with typical buck converter waveforms are presented.

### 2.1 Conventional Converter Topologies

The choice of the switching converter topology is a critical part of the overall amplifier design. If state of the art semiconductor technology is used then the topology will determine the equipment performance limitations. Since the performance requirements are particularly demanding for this design the topology selection is very important.

The following topologies have been previously used for four quadrant wide bandwidth switching amplifiers:
(a) $\hat{C u k}$ Converter, [17]
(b) Bridge Converter, [1]
(c) Multi level modified Bridge Converters, [2]

The two quadrant $\hat{C u k}$ converter is illustrated in Figure 2.1. The $\hat{C u k}$ converter which is a reasonably new development in converter topologies has some important advantages over conventional Buck and Boost converters. The most significant property which makes it very useful for switching amplifiers is its property of having zero output ripple current, provided coupled inductors (L1 and L2) are used. This gives the possibility of wide control bandwidths and therefore excellent performance. A 40 watt amplifier using this topology has been documented, [17]. This amplifier gave very good performance with a flat frequency response to 20 kHz and a Total Harmonic Distortion of $0.1 \%$. However this converter has some serious short comings when a design is attempted at the power levels required in this unit. To aid in the appreciation of this, a brief discussion of the converter operation is included.

Under steady state operating conditions the coupling capacitor, C, has an average voltage of $\left(V_{1}+V_{2}\right)$ across it. The capacitor is normally sized such that the ripple voltage over it is relatively small and can be neglected. This condition is forced on the designer in order to keep the capacitor dielectric losses low as well as to keep the output ripple current low. When $S_{1}$ is turned on ( $S_{2}$ off) $V_{1}$ is applied across $L_{1}$ and current $I_{2}$ flows through $S_{1}$. The current $I_{2}$ flows through $L_{2}$ and $C$ also via $S_{1}$. Notice that the voltage $V_{1}$ is also applied across $L_{2}$, this is the reason why the two windings can be coupled. While $S_{2}$ is on ( $S_{1}$ is off) the voltage $V_{2}$ is applied across $L_{2}$ and $L_{1}$. The current $I_{1}$ flows through $L_{1}$ and $C$ via $S_{2}$. The current $I_{2}$ flows through $L_{2}$ also via $S_{2}$. During the entire cycle energy is transferred between the source and the load via the capacitor and there is an interchange of energy between the capacitor and the magnetic core.


Figure 2.1 Cuk Converter Operation

By consideration of charge conservation in the capacitor and input to output power equality the D.C. transfer ratio can be easily shown to be:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{V}_{2}=\mathrm{V}_{1} \frac{\mathrm{D}}{1-\mathrm{D}} \\
& \mathrm{D}=\frac{\mathrm{T}_{1}}{\mathrm{~T}_{1}+\mathrm{T}_{2}}
\end{align*}
$$

The variables $T_{1}$ and $T_{2}$ are the on times for $S_{1}$ an $S_{2}$ respectivly.

An important property of the coupled inductor configuration is that if the turns ratio $\sqrt{\frac{L_{1}}{L_{2}}}$ is adjusted to be equal to the coupling factor then the effective output inductance can be shown to approach infinity. This means that in the ideal case the output ripple can be forced to zero. This is an excellent property which makes this converter ideal for switching amplifier applications. However the coupling capacitor at high power levels is of considerable physical size since it is effectively transferring the entire converter load and must be rated at least two times the input voltage. In addition to this the two switching devices must be capable of handling twice the rated load current at twice the input voltage making any design difficult at higher power levels. The switch snubbing requirements are as a result considerable.

Although the topology has some very good advantages it is not a practical solution at high powers. A more practical four quadrant topology is the standard bridge inverter as shown in Figure 2.2. The simplest switching strategy for the bridge inverter is to alternately switch diagonal pairs of switches. For a bus voltage of 2 E there are two possible output levels, 2 E and -2 E . This gives rise to two level pulse width modulation as illustrated. The output frequency in this case is the same as the switch frequency. Phase shifted leg switching can also be used to obtain double the output ripple frequency.

Bridge Inverter


Two Level Modulation


Figure 2.2 Bridge Inverter Modulation Techniques

This also results in the production of three output levels, $+2 \mathrm{E}, 0,-2 \mathrm{E}$. The same technique was used in the earlier amplifier design, [1]. Because the effective frequency is doubled and the voltage step is halved the maximum ripple current in the output inductor is one quarter that of the two level case. This gives a significant advantage for a little extra complexity in the control system. A further extension of this is five level modulation which results in an output frequency of four times the switch frequency and a voltage step of one quarter that of the two level case. The result of this is a sixteen fold reduction in the maximum ripple current. This is a large advantage which has been exploited in a number of high power converters. In particular Marchesoni, [2], has applied the technique in amplifiers with a rating of 3.6 MVA and a bandwidth of 10 kHz for application in nuclear fusion experiments. It is quite clear then that this technique would yield acceptable results in the case of this amplifier. The two extra switching levels are normally obtained by the addition of two phase legs in either the neutral point clamped configuration or the series connected bridge configuration as illustrated in Figure 2.3. A typical sine wave modulated five level waveform is shown in Figure 2.4. Marchesoni has proposed a quite complex control system to obtain the correct switch sequence to give the five levels. However it was believed that a simple phase shifting strategy was all that was required, this was later confirmed by simulation and a scale model.

### 2.2 Multilevel Modulation

The benefits of multilevel switching using phase displaced legs is illustrated in Figure 2.5. Part(a) shows a two level inverter supplied at 2E. This can be modeled as one source $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{a}}(\mathrm{t})$ which switches between +2 E and -2 E . Part (b) shows a three level inverter which can be modeled by two sources which switch $180^{\circ}$ out of phase and are added to produce the output voltage. Each source represents one inverter leg. Three output levels are produced and the output frequency is twice the switch frequency. A five level inverter model is shown in Part (c).

Neutral Point Clamped Topology


Series Connected Bridge Topology


Figure 2.3 Conventional Five Level Topologies


Figure 2.4 Five Level Modulation Waveform


Figure 2.5 Two, Three and Five Level Switching Strategy Comparison

Two more sources are introduced, with all sources being phase displaced by $90^{\circ}$. The addition of the four sources produces the five possible levels as illustrated. In each case each level is produced in a different duty cycle range. The output inductor ripple current as a function of the duty ratio is also shown for each case. For the two level inverter the maximum occurs at a duty ratio of one half and has a value of:

$$
\Delta I=\frac{E}{L f_{S}}
$$

For the three level inverter the maximum ripple occurs at one quarter and three quarters duty ratio and has a value of:

$$
\Delta \mathrm{I}=\frac{\mathrm{E}}{4 \mathrm{~L} \mathrm{f}}
$$

For the five level inverter maximums occur at duty ratios of one eighth, three eighths, five eighth an seven eighths with a value of:

$$
\Delta I=\frac{E}{16 L \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{S}}}
$$

Figure 2.6 gives a better appreciation of the overall improvement in output current ripple of five level modulation over two level modulation as a function of duty ratio. The average ratio of the peak to peak ripple for a five level system to a two level system is 0.09 . This means that a five level system switching at 50 kHz is, in terms of peak ripple current, as good as a two level system switching at 556 kHz . This represents a substantial improvement in output quality and the achievable control bandwidth. The improvement of a five level modulation system over a three level system is also displayed in Figure 2.7. In this case the average improvement is one third. A five level modulation simulation was run using "TUTSIM",[18], to determine the output voltage and current spectrum for a 10 kHz input signal.


Figure 2.6 Current Ripple Improvement of 5 Level Over 2 Level Modulation as a Function of Duty Ratio


Figure 2.7 Current Ripple Improvement of 5 Level Over 3 Level Modulation as a Function of Duty Ratio

The Tutsim model is shown in Figure 2.8. A common 50 kHz symmetrical ramp signal is delayed by $5 \mu \mathrm{~S}, 10 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ and $15 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ to obtain the four phase set. Each ramp is compared with the modulating signal to produce the four phase PWM. These are applied to relays which switch between +E and $-\mathrm{E}(+/-280$ volts in this case). These are summed to produce the five level load voltage. The load has been set to $2 \Omega$ resistance in series with $200 \mu \mathrm{H}$ inductance. The simulated load voltage and current for a 10 kHz modulating signal is shown in Figure 2.9. The voltage spectrum shown in Figure 2.10 is of interest since it shows that the spectral components are side bands spaced at increments of the modulating frequency around a suppressed carrier at the switch frequency multiplied by four. In this case the first side band is at $200 \pm 10 \mathrm{kHz}$. Note that there is no component at the switch frequency of 50 kHz . Perfect cancellation is to be expected since this is an ideal simulation, however in a real system perfect cancellation cannot be obtained. Nevertheless the 50 kHz component can be kept relatively low by careful design. The current spectrum is shown in Figure 2.11. The high frequency spectral components produced by the five level scheme are found to be heavily attenuated by the load with the highest being at 150 kHz with an amplitude of only a fraction of an amp. for a $30 \mathrm{~A}_{\text {rms }}$ output.The control bandwidth is normally limited by the peak to peak ripple current. The converter plus controller is normally considered to be a linear system in so far as the control analysis is concerned. This assumption however breaks down once the ripple level at the input to the pulse width modulators becomes excessive. Normally bandwidths are restricted to one tenth of the effective switching frequency. This would mean a bandwidth of 20 kHz should be easily obtained with a five level converter switching at 50 kHz . This topic will be more thoroughly explored in Chapter Five.


Figure 2.8 Five Level Modulation Simulation "TUTSIM" Model


Figure 2.9 Five Level Modulation Simulation Results (Load Voltage and Current)
(SWJ) S7IO^


Figure 2.11 Five Level Modulation Simulation Load Current Spectrum

### 2.3 The New Five Level Converter Topology

As previously indicated five level modulation has normally been achieved by the neutral point clamped or the series connected bridge topology. In both cases two extra phase legs and hence four switches are added to produce the two extra levels. For the application this represented an unacceptable increase in the power circuit complexity and so a different approach was needed. An alternative solution is to replace the bridge converter by four buck converters. If the buck converters operate in the continuous conduction mode they produce a two level output waveform. These can be controlled to produce the four phase waveforms as shown in part(c) of Figure 2.5. A five level modulation scheme can therefore be achieved if the outputs of the four buck converters can be combined. Figure 2.12 shows how the combining was achieved. The two buck converters from one phase leg are coupled by a center tapped auto transformer and the load is connected between phase legs. The phase leg output voltages will be given by:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{a}}(\mathrm{t})=\frac{\mathrm{vap}_{\mathrm{ap}}(\mathrm{t})+\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{an}}(\mathrm{t})}{2} \\
& \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{b}}(\mathrm{t})=\frac{\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{bp}}(\mathrm{t})+\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{bn}}(\mathrm{t})}{2}
\end{align*}
$$

The buck converter voltages all have identical pulsewidth modulated waveshapes but are phase displaced. With $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ap}}(\mathrm{t})$ as a reference and a buck converter switching period of $T$, the following equations can be written:

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{an}}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ap}}(\mathrm{t}-\mathrm{T} / 4) & 2.3-3 \\
\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{bn}}(\mathrm{t})=-\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ap}}(\mathrm{t}-\mathrm{T} / 2) & 2.3-4 \\
\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{bp}}(\mathrm{t})=-\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ap}}(\mathrm{t}-3 \mathrm{~T} / 4) & 2.3-5
\end{array}
$$

And the output voltage is:

$$
\mathrm{V}_{\text {out }}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{a}}(\mathrm{t})-\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{b}}(\mathrm{t})
$$



Figure 2.12 New Five Level Inverter Topology

Therefore combining equations:

$$
\mathrm{V}_{\text {out }}(\mathrm{t})=\frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ap}}(\mathrm{t})+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ap}}(\mathrm{t}-\mathrm{T} / 4)\left(\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ap}}-\mathrm{T} / 2\right)+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ap}}(\mathrm{t}-3 \mathrm{~T} / 4)}{2} \quad 2.3-7
$$

The output will therefore be five level providing all the buck converters remain in conduction. Because the positive buck converters "AP" and "BP" can only source current and the negative buck converters "AN" and "BN" can only sink current a bias current must be maintained flowing down each leg at all times so that all converters remain in conduction. This bias current can be created by forcing a volt-second difference between the top and the bottom converters which causes a magnetizing current $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{ma}}$ to be established in $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{m}}$. The discussion of the bias current will be limited to that concerning the " A " leg, the operation of the " B " leg being identical. This volt-second difference is easily produced by forcing a deviation in pulsewidths at the modulator stage of the controller. The bias current is given by the following: (note: all the following equations refer to average currents)
$\mathrm{I}_{\text {bias }}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{ap}}(\mathrm{t})+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{an}}(\mathrm{t})-\mathrm{abs}\left[\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{ap}}(\mathrm{t})-\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{an}}(\mathrm{t})\right]}{2} \quad 2.3-8$

The above expression is simply the minimum out of $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{ap}}$ and $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{an}}$. The two converter currents from Figure 2.12 are related to the leg magnetizing current $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{ma}}$ and the output current $I_{0}$ by the following relationships:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{ap}}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{ma}}(\mathrm{t})+\frac{\mathrm{I}_{0}(\mathrm{t})}{2} \\
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{an}}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{ma}}(\mathrm{t})-\frac{\mathrm{I}_{0}(\mathrm{t})}{2}
\end{align*}
$$

Therefore from equation 2.3-8:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{bias}}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{ma}}(\mathrm{t})-\frac{\operatorname{abs}\left[\mathrm{I}_{0}(\mathrm{t})\right]}{2}
$$

And $I_{m a}$ can be controlled by the differential volt seconds across $L_{m}$ with the following relationship applying:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{ma}}(\mathrm{t})=\frac{1}{\mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{m}}} \int \Delta \mathrm{~V}(\mathrm{t}) \mathrm{dt}
$$

A simple proportional negative feedback control loop can be used to set the bias current to a desired level. However it can be seen from equation $2.3-11$ that the output current acts as a disturbing influence in this loop and so it is found that it is not practical nor desirable to design a controller which can hold the bias current constant, this is discussed in more detail in Chapter Five.

An incidental but very significant benefit of this topology is the elimination of the "leg shoot through fault" possibility of the normal bridge inverter. In high voltage systems this can cause the complete destruction of the inverter components. For this inverter the through current(bias current) is a controlled variable.

### 2.4 Coupling Transformer Selection

The selection of the coupling transformer is effected by the following factors:
(a) Buck converter maximum peak to peak ripple current
(b) Performance of the bias current control loop

The performance of the bias current control loop is the most complex factor to analyse. During dynamic changes in output current the bias current control loop will act to keep the bias current constant as already explained. In doing this it can be shown that a 50 kHz spectral component will be introduced into the output voltage.

To show that this is true consider that the output current is increasing at a fixed rate, $m$, so that:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{0}=\mathrm{mt}
$$

Now it will be assumed that the control loop has the ability to maintain the bias current constant at $I_{\text {set }}$. This means that:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{m}}=\mathrm{I}_{\text {set }}+\frac{\mathrm{m}}{2} \mathrm{t}
$$

To obtain $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{m}}$ a voltage $\Delta \mathrm{V}$ must be impressed across $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{m}}$ which will be given by:

$$
\Delta \mathrm{V}=\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{m}} \frac{\mathrm{dI}_{\mathrm{m}}}{\mathrm{dt}}=\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{m}} \frac{\mathrm{~m}}{2}
$$

This means a constant differential voltage must be maintained across $L_{m}$ to keep Ibias constant when the output current is rising at a constant rate. Because the phase rotation of the converter must be ap;an;bn;bp to obtain the five level output the converters contribute one pulse in the same order to the output each 20 uS as illustrated in Figure 2.13. To create the differential voltage between the "AP" and "AN" converters the "AP" pulse will be wider than the "AN" pulse and likewise the "BP" pulse will be wider than the "BN" pulse. Because of the phase rotation the result is two long pulses followed by two short pulses. This pattern repeats itself every $20 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ and therefore has a 50 kHz fundamental component. The difference between the two waveforms clearly illustrates this. The 50 kHz component can be shown to be proportional to $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{m}}$ and m . This 50 kHz component is undesirable since it degrades the output waveshape as well as giving potential problems in the main current control loop. The exact calculation of the 50 kHz component requires complex analysis beyond the scope of this project.


Figure 2.13 The Effect of Bias Current Control on the Modulation Integrity

The approach in this design has been to not make the bias current control loop respond to fast rates of change in output. That is its bandwidth is limited which avoids the problem described above. However this results in the necessity of setting the bias current slightly higher. This leaves the buck converter peak to peak ripple current as the major factor involved in the selection of $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{m}}$. The low power model was constructed with $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{m}}=400 \mu \mathrm{H}$. The "TUTSIM" simulation and the low power model both gave quite acceptable results using this value. The simulation showed that $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{m}}$ could be reduced to $200 \mu \mathrm{H}$ before the performance degraded. It was found by simulation that for inductances below $200 \mu \mathrm{H}$ the whole system became prone to chaotic modes of behavior. With only a small magnetizing inductance small switching descrepencies can cause large changes in the output current. This can lead to complex non-linear interactions between the two control loops which is thought to lead to the disturbances that occurred. Although it was intended to make $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{m}}=400 \mu \mathrm{H}$ and all the low power and simulation testing was based on this value, because of the restrictions of core sizes and availability the actual implemented value will be $325 \mu \mathrm{H}$. This is constructed from six SIEMENS UU $93 / 152 / 30$; Seferrit N 27 cores with a 7.5 mm gap between cores. The winding consists of 28 turns of $25 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ litz conductor with a center tap.

The peak to peak ripple current in $L_{m}$, which is also that carried by the converters since the output ripple is considered negligible, can be found by realising that the maximum time for which the bus voltage is applied across it is $5 \mu \mathrm{~S}$. The ripple current will therefore be given by:

$$
\begin{align*}
\Delta \mathrm{I} & =\frac{2 \mathrm{E} \Delta \mathrm{t}}{\mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{m}}} \\
& =\frac{2 \times 336 \times 5}{325}=10.3 \mathrm{~A} \mathrm{p}-\mathrm{p}
\end{align*}
$$

This ripple is added to the bias current in addition to the output peak current. This effects how low the bias current can be set. In this respect a peak current of 5.15 A represents an acceptable amount.

### 2.5 Buck Converter Cell Topology

A simplified schematic of the chosen Buck converter cell is shown in Figure 2.14. The primary factor involved in the selection of the Buck converter cell topology is the necessity to keep the switching losses in the IGBT and freewheel diodes to an acceptable level. To reduce the switching loss snubbers are employed. There is a preference in high power converters for lossless snubbing systems to be implemented. The extra complexity of lossless snubbing is justified since the lost power would otherwise be so high that it becomes difficult to dissipate with an acceptable temperature rise. There have been many lossless snubbing systems proposed in the literature,[10-14]. The basic principle is always to reduce the IGBT switch on and switch off loss as well as the freewheel diode reverse recovery loss. The reverse recovery loss is controlled by the peak reverse current. This is reduced by limiting the current diversion, (di/dt), rate from the freewheel diodes ( $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{f}}$ ) to the IGBT. Because of the addition of $L_{f}$ the IGBT turn on loss is also kept low since the rate of rise of collector current is slow relative to the devices inherent rise time. Limitation of di/dt is achieved by the addition of the inductor $L_{f}$ in series $D_{f}$. This diode reverse recovery current also adds to the peak current which the IGBT is required to carry. From this point of view it is also desirable that it be reduced. However the inclusion of $L_{f}$ means that the IGBT turn off the load current can only be transferred to the freewheel diodes at a limited rate. This rate is determined by how high an IGBT collector emitter voltage overshoot can be tolerated at turn off.

The IGBT turn off loss is limited by providing an alternate path for the load current with a controlled rate of increase of collector emitter voltage to a peak level which is well within the devices capability. A capacitor is normally used to control the rate of rise of collector emitter voltage. If this capacitor is made sufficiently large it can also be made to completely divert the load current into $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$ without $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ce}}$ becoming excessive. This however results in a relatively long diversion time and large snubber capacitors which makes this approach impractical for high operating frequencies.


Figure 2.14 Simplified Positive Buck Converter Cell

A better approach is to utilise the capacitor to just limit the rate of rise of voltage such that the turn off energy is at an acceptable level and use a lossless clamp to limit the maximum collector emitter voltage.

The lossless snubbing/clamping system finally chosen is a combination of two techniques as shown in Figure 2.14. A resonant resetting capacitive dv/dt IGBT snubber was implmented which requires access to a d.c. supply center point, which is normal for high voltage buses. This topology was the least complex out of those reviewed, [11]. The lossless clamping system uses a self oscillating inverter (SOI) to feed the energy associated with the magnetization of $L_{f}$ back to the supply, [13]. The clamp voltage $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}$ controls the IGBT overshoot and hence the current diversion rate. The clamp system $D_{c}$ and $V_{c}$ guarantees that the IGBT collector emitter voltage is restrained. The SOI is tied to the supply bus, this means the clamp voltage is determined by the bus voltage and the clamp energy associated with the magnetization of $L_{f}$ is conserved. It is possible to use only the clamp and omit the the snubber but the switching loss will be considerable. To illustrate this point the loss will be calculated. Energy would be dissipated during the IGBT current fall time of 200 nS . For $\mathrm{E}=336 \mathrm{~V}$, a clamp voltage of 156 V and a load current of 100 A the power dissipation for a switch frequency of 50 kHz would be:

$$
\begin{aligned}
P_{s} & =\left(2 E+V_{c}\right) \frac{I_{L}}{2} t_{f} f_{s} \\
& =828 \times \frac{100}{2} \times 0.2 \times 0.05=414 \text { watts }
\end{aligned}
$$

As will be shown in Chapter Four this is considerably more than the conduction loss (178 watts worst case) and is unacceptably high.

A better approach is to utilise the capacitor to just limit the rate of rise of voltage such that the turn off energy is at an acceptable level and use a lossless clamp to limit the maximum collector emitter voltage.

The lossless snubbing/clamping system finally chosen is a combination of two techniques as shown in Figure 2.14. A resonant resetting capacitive dv/dt IGBT snubber was implmented which requires access to a d.c. supply center point, which is normal for high voltage buses. This topology was the least complex out of those reviewed, [11]. The lossless clamping system uses a self oscillating inverter (SOI) to feed the energy associated with the magnetization of $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$ back to the supply, [13]. The clamp voltage $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}$ controls the IGBT overshoot and hence the current diversion rate. The clamp system $D_{c}$ and $V_{c}$ guarantees that the IGBT collector emitter voltage is restrained. The SOI is tied to the supply bus, this means the clamp voltage is determined by the bus voltage and the clamp energy associated with the magnetization of $L_{f}$ is conserved. It is possible to use only the clamp and omit the the snubber but the switching loss will be considerable. To illustrate this point the loss will be calculated. Energy would be dissipated during the IGBT current fall time of 200 nS . For $\mathrm{E}=336 \mathrm{~V}$, a clamp voltage of 156 V and a load current of 100 A the power dissipation for a switch frequency of 50 kHz would be:

$$
\begin{aligned}
P_{s} & =\left(2 E+V_{c}\right) \frac{I_{L}}{2} t_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}} \\
& =828 \times \frac{100}{2} \times 0.2 \times 0.05=414 \text { watts }
\end{aligned}
$$

As will be shown in Chapter Four this is considerably more than the conduction loss ( 178 watts worst case) and is unacceptably high.

The unclamped peak voltage is:

$$
V_{p}=2 E+I_{L} \sqrt{\frac{L_{f}}{C_{s}}}
$$

The cosine decay time is:

$$
\mathrm{t}_{3}-\mathrm{t}_{2}=\frac{\pi}{2} \frac{1}{\sqrt{L_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}}
$$

The case where the voltage reaches its peak only occurs at low load currents. It is assumed in Figure 2.15 that the load current is high and the clamp voltage is reached with the current in $D_{s}$ being diverted to to the clamp. This current then decays linearly over $t_{3}$ to $t_{4}$. The diode $D_{f}$ takes up current over this period due to the clamp voltage diverting current to $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$. The diversion to $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$ is lossless with energy being stored in $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ and also transferred back to the supply via the active clamp. At the IGBT turn-on two processes occur. The first process is the diversion of the load current from $D_{f}$ to the IGBT at a rate determined by:

$$
\frac{\mathrm{dI}_{\mathrm{f}}(\mathrm{t})}{\mathrm{dt}}=\frac{2 \mathrm{E}}{\mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}}}
$$

The value of $L_{f}$ is selected to limit the reverse recovery loss in $D_{f}$. At $t_{6}$ diode $D_{f}$ recovers. The IGBT turn on loss is low as its collector voltage falls before any significant collector is established. The second process is the resonant resetting of capacitor $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$. At $\mathrm{t}_{5}$ a resonant current begins to flow in $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{r}}, \mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{r}}, \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ and the IGBT. The current is:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{r}}(\mathrm{t})=\left(\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}-\mathrm{E}\right) \sqrt{\frac{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}{\mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{r}}}} \sin \frac{\mathrm{t}}{\sqrt{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{r}}}}
$$



Figure 2.15 Positve Buck Converter Cell Waveforms

This current persists until $C_{s}$ is reset to $E$. Current then transfers to $D_{s}, D_{r}$ and $L_{r}$. The inductor decays linearly to zero at the following rate:

$$
\frac{\mathrm{dI}_{\mathrm{r}}(\mathrm{t})}{\mathrm{dt}}=\frac{\mathrm{E}}{\mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{r}}} \quad 2.5-6
$$

During this period the capacitor overcharge energy due to the clamping action during the IGBT turn-off is returned to the supply.

## 3. POWER DEVICE MODELING

An important part of any high power converter design is the determination of the power device voltage stress, current stress and power dissipation. These are used in an iterative process to:
(a) select the power devices
(b) determine suitable snubbing
(c) determine the cooling requirement

The development of accurate device models is fundamental to calculation of the power semiconductor stress levels. In this chapter the modeling of the power diodes and the IGBT will be considered.

The selected diodes had reverse recovery data limited to one operating point. This necessitated the development of a procedure for the calculation of the reverse recovery performance from limited data. A large proportion of the chapter is devoted to semiconductor diode charge control theory and the subsequent development of this procedure. Because the SPICE circuit simulation package has been used for design verification its diode reverse recovery modelling technique is examined in detail, [44].

Another diode characteristic which is of importance is forward recovery. The mechanism of forward recovery and its implications in this converter are also discussed.

### 3.1 Power Diode Physics

Before the modeling is discussed the physics of the semiconductor diode will be reviewed.

Figure $3-1$ shows important features of a $\mathrm{n}^{+}-\mathrm{p}$ junction diode in the reverse and forward biased conditions. The following symbols are used:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{n}_{n 0}-\mathrm{n}^{+} \text {region equilibrium electron(majority carrier)concentration } \\
& \mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{n}}-\mathrm{n}^{+} \text {region electron (majority carrier) concentration } \\
& \mathrm{p}_{\mathrm{n}}-\mathrm{n}^{+} \text {region equilibrium hole (minority carrier) concentration } \\
& \mathrm{p}_{\mathrm{n}}-\mathrm{n}^{+} \text {region hole (minority carrier) concentration } \\
& \mathrm{p}_{\mathrm{po}}-\mathrm{p} \text { region equilibrium hole (majority carrier) concentration } \\
& \mathrm{p}_{\mathrm{p}}-\mathrm{p} \text { region hole (majority carrier) concentration } \\
& \mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{po}}-\mathrm{p} \text { region equilibrium electron(minority carrier)concentration } \\
& \mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{p}}-\mathrm{p} \text { region electron (minority carrier) concentration }
\end{aligned}
$$

The $\mathrm{n}^{+}$region is heavily doped as compared with the p region as displayed by the reverse biased charge concentration diagrams, in practice $\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{no}}$ can be two or three orders of magnitude greater than $\mathrm{p}_{\mathrm{po}}$. The charge concentration is presented on a logarithmic scale. Under zero bias conditions because of the charge concentration gradients holes will diffuse from the p region to the $\mathrm{n}^{+}$region and electrons will diffuse from the $\mathrm{n}^{+}$region to the p region. The diffusion current density is directly proportional to the charge concentration gradient with respect to distance, $x$.

$$
\begin{align*}
& J_{\text {diff }}=q D_{\mathrm{p}} \frac{d \mathrm{p}}{d x}+q D_{\mathrm{n}} \frac{d n}{d x} \\
& J_{\text {diff }}-\text { Total diffusion current density } \\
& q \quad-\text { Electronic charge } \\
& D_{\mathrm{p}}, \mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{n}}-\text { Diffusion coefficients } \\
& \mathrm{p}, \mathrm{n}-\text { Charge concentrations }
\end{align*}
$$

## Reverse Biased



Foward Biased


FIGURE 3-1 Reverse and Forward Bias Carrier Densities

In both cases these diffusing carriers will combine with majority carriers in the opposite region. The result is a depletion of mobile carriers in the junction area the junction area resulting in an electric field between the remaining accepter atoms in the p region and donor atoms in the $\mathrm{n}^{+}$region. This electric field causes a drift of charges in an opposing direction to the diffusion movement.

$$
\begin{align*}
& J_{\mathrm{drift}}=q\left(\mu_{\mathrm{p}} \mathrm{p}+\mu_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{n}\right) E \\
& J_{\mathrm{drift}}-\text { Drift current density } \\
& E \quad-\text { Electric field strength } \\
& \mu_{\mathrm{p}}, \mu_{\mathrm{n}}-\text { Carrier mobility constants }
\end{align*}
$$

A balance is reached between the drift flow (current) and the diffusion flow (current) and no net charge movement occurs. A contact potential ( $\phi_{0}$ ) is created across the depletion region (also known as the space charge or transition region), this can be calculated from consideration of the conditions required for charge flow balance, [23]. Application of an external reverse bias extracts majority carriers from the $\mathrm{n}^{+}$and p regions at the space charge boundaries expanding its width. The space charge region behaves like a capacitor with an increasing plate separation. The reverse biased diode is normally modeled by a non-linear capacitance:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{\mathrm{C}(0)}{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{dep}}\left(\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{d}}\right)=\left[\begin{array}{l}
1-\frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{d}}}{\phi_{0}}
\end{array} \mathrm{~m}\right.} \\
& \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{dep}}\left(\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{d}}\right)-\text { Depletion Capacitance } \\
& \mathrm{C}(0)-\text { Zero Bias Capacitance }\left(\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{d}}=0\right) \\
& \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{d}}-\text { Diode Voltage } \\
& \phi_{0}-\text { Contact Potential(approx. } 0.5 \mathrm{~V} \text { for power diodes) } \\
& m \text { - Grading Coefficient }
\end{aligned}
$$

The grading coefficient depends abruptness of the junction. An abrupt junction has an $m=1 / 2$ whereas a linearly graded junction has $m=1 / 3$. High voltage diodes naturally tend to be fabricated with a graded junction. For diodes with $\mathrm{V}_{\text {rrm }}>$ $500 \mathrm{~V} m$ should be $1 / 3$ [20-22, 28-29] manufacturers often do not quote the diode capacitance in data sheets. In the case where it is given it is often not measured at zero bias, though $C(0)$ can easily be calculated using the above equation. When it is not given a simple rule of thumb can be used, [22-22];

$$
\mathrm{C}(0)=12 \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{av}}(\text { rated }) \mathrm{pF} \quad 3.1-4
$$

This is a reasonable estimate for Fast and Ultra Fast Diodes in the $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{av}}<100 \mathrm{~A}$; $\mathrm{V}_{\text {rrm }}<1000 \mathrm{~V}$ range. This is based on examination of data for many diodes. Under steady state reverse bias conditions a reverse current flows due to minority carrier flow. Because the minority carrier densities are low in the reverse biased condition this current is low except when the reverse voltage approaches the breakdown level. Reverse breakdown occurs when the electric field reaches a level at which minority carriers gain sufficient energy during the drift process to excite additional minority carriers to the conduction energy band. These in turn can excite further carriers. This is known as avalanche multiplication and the result being a sharp rise in reverse current for only small increases in voltage. If this is not limited destruction of the diode results. Some power semiconductors are designed to avalanche to a certain extent and therefore act to absorb transient turnoff energy in power electronic circuits, such a device is the Philips BYX30 fast rectifier diode, [22].

When forward bias is applied the depletion region shrinks allowing electrons from the $\mathrm{n}^{+}$region to spill (injected) into the p region.

In the analysis that follows it is assumed that all conduction originates from electrons transiting to the $p$ region, this is valid because equilibrium electron concentration in the $\mathrm{n}^{+}$region is far higher than the equilibrium hole concentration in the $p$ region. Once in the $p$ region electrons become minority carriers. The minority carrier density at the transition area boundary will increase which in turn causes a concentration gradient into the p region. A minority carrier diffusion current into the p region results. Because the minority carrier concentration is now above the equilibrium level there is a natural tendency to return to equilibrium, this occurs by what is known as recombination. That is minority carriers recombine with majority carriers. The recombination rate is proportional to, the excess minority carrier concentration above the equilibrium level:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{n}}=\frac{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{pe}}}{\tau_{\mathrm{d}}} \\
& \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{n}}-\text { Minority carrier concentration recombination rate } \\
& \mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{pe}}-\text { Excess electron concentration in the p-region } \\
& \tau_{\mathrm{d}}-\text { Excess minority carrier lifetime }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
3.1-5
$$

The minority carrier life time represents the average time between recombinations, [23]. The excess minority carrier concentration will build up throughout the $p$ region until a balance between injected minority carrier flow and the recombination flow is established. The minority carrier concentration from the transition boundary to the ohmic contact can be solved for using this balance condition. Where the p region, which in this case is termed the base of the diode, is long compared with the average distance travelled by a minority carrier before recombination the profile of the concentration is exponential as shown in Figure $3-1$.

This can be easily understood by realising that minority carrier conduction is occurring via diffusion which is proportional to the concentration gradient. At any point this current is balanced by the recombination current which is proportional to the concentration. Therefore the concentration gradient must reduce with the concentration level which implies an exponential relationship. If the base of the diode is short compared with the minority carrier travel before recombination (short based diode) then most carriers do not recombine before reaching the ohmic contact. The minority carrier lifetime now becomes the transit time through the base region. The short based diode is assumed in the SPICE model and the minority carrier lifetime has been called the Transit Time $\left(\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{t}}\right)$. The carrier concentration is assumed to linearly decrease towards the ohmic contact, [23]. Real diodes will be something between the two cases, but this detailed knowledge is not necessary for our purposes. The minority carrier injection is normally classified into three levels, low level, medium level and high level. This relates to the minority carrier concentration. Low level injection is characterised by the minority carrier concentration being small compared with the majority carrier concentration. There is a strong tendency to maintain space charge neutrality in the p region which is governed by the following:

$$
\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{a}}+\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{p}}=\mathrm{p}_{\mathrm{p}}
$$

$\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{a}}$ - Accepter atom concentration

Since $n_{p} \ll N_{a}$ for low level injection the effect of increases in $n_{p}$ on $p_{p}$ are neglected. Of cause what actually happens is there is a tendency for the increased minority carrier profile to be matched by an increased majority carrier profile. This is driven by an electric field in the p region directed towards the $\mathrm{n}^{+}$region. A drift of holes occurs towards the transition region to balance the charge from the injected electrons. Some equilibrium field and majority carrier concentration is reached.

The electric field gives rise to an voltage drop which adds with the contact potential to produce the total diode forward drop. For low level injection these effects are very small and are neglected. However as the forward current and hence the injection level increases, the majority carrier concentration increases significantly. Tied to this is an increase in the electric field and hence forward voltage drop. High level injection is characterised by a minority carrier concentration approaching that of the majority carriers and the majority carrier concentration significantly increasing above the equilibrium value, ie excess holes in the p region. Power diodes operate at high injection levels and hence exhibit significant forward voltage drop in addition to the contact potential. They are generally modeled as an ideal diode in series with a resistance. However this resistance is not the bulk resistance of the semiconductor which is many times higher. In the high level injection condition the large number of excess holes in the p region act to increase the conductivity. This is termed conductivity modulation, [29].

### 3.2 Power Diode Turn Off Characteristics

The important feature of the switch off process is the reverse recovery period. During the commutation process the forward current is reduced to zero followed by a short period for which a reverse current flows. The function of the reverse current is to re-establish charge equilibrium conditions within the semiconductor. No reverse voltage can be supported until this occurs. Until this time reverse current is therefore determined by external circuit elements. Figure 3.2(a) shows a Buck Converter. With switch $S_{1}$ open assume a steady state current of $I_{f}$ flows in the inductor and diode. The inductance, L , limits the diode $\frac{\mathrm{dI}_{\mathrm{d}}}{\mathrm{dt}}$ during commutation. With closure of $S_{1}$ voltage $E$ is applied across $L$ causing $I_{d}$ to decay at a rate of:

$$
\frac{\mathrm{dI}_{\mathrm{d}}}{\mathrm{dt}}=\frac{\mathrm{E}}{\mathrm{~L}}
$$



Figure 3-2 Power Diode Reverse Recovery Transient

The diode current reaches zero and then rises in the reverse direction. At time $t_{1}$ the diode begins to support reverse voltage and the $\frac{\mathrm{dI}_{\mathrm{d}}}{\mathrm{dt}}$ begins to decline. Shortly after this at $t_{2}$ the reverse current reaches a peak and begins to decline. At this point the diode supports the supply voltage E. As the reverse current decays the diode reverse voltage rises above the supply voltage and peaks at $t_{3}$. This period is known as "snap off" and the peak reverse voltage is determined by the maximum rate of decay of current. The maximum reverse current and snap off characteristics are functions of both the diode and the external circuit elements. External snubbing networks, for example, influence the snap off period.

The reverse recovery behavior of the $\mathrm{P}-\mathrm{N}$ junction diode can be modeled using charge control theory, [27]. The charge control relationship will now be discussed.

If steady state conditions are assumed and all minority carriers are recombining then:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{d}}=\int \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{n}} \cdot \mathrm{~d} \nu \\
& \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}}=\int \mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{pe}} \cdot \mathrm{~d} \nu \\
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{d}}-\text { Diode forward current } \\
& \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}}-\text { Stored excess minority charge in } \mathrm{n} \text { region } \\
& \nu-\text { Volume of semiconductor material }
\end{align*}
$$

From equations $3.1-5,3.2-1$ and $3.2-2$ it follows that:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{d}}=\frac{\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}}}{\tau_{\mathrm{d}}} \text { or } \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}}=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{d}} \cdot \tau_{\mathrm{d}}
$$

This is a significant result showing that the excess stored charge is proportional to the forward current. Under high levels of injection and/or short based diodes the assumption that all current flowing due to recombination is not valid. This though does not effect the general concept. It does however effect the value $\tau_{\mathrm{d}}$. The lifetime is a function of current but can be assumed to be constant to simplify the analysis without excessive inaccuracy, [24]. The dynamic relationship between $Q_{d}$ and $I_{d}$ can be deduced by considering $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{d}}$ changing from $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{d} 1}$ to $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{d} 2}$ in time $\delta$ t. Then the total charge movement through the diode is:

$$
\delta \mathrm{Q}=\left[\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{d} 1}+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{d} 2}}{2}\right] \delta \mathrm{t}+\delta \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}}
$$

Now since:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{d} 1}=\frac{\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d} 1}}{\tau_{\mathrm{d}}} \\
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{d} 2}=\frac{\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d} 2}}{\tau_{\mathrm{d}}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Substituting into equation 3.2-4

$$
\delta \mathrm{Q}=\left[\frac{\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d} 1}+\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d} 2}}{2 \tau_{\mathrm{d}}}\right] \delta \mathrm{t}+\delta \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}}
$$

As $\delta \mathrm{t}$ becomes small:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d} 1}=\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d} 1}=\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}} \\
& \mathrm{dQ}=\frac{\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}}}{\tau_{\mathrm{d}}} \mathrm{dt}+\mathrm{dQ}_{\mathrm{d}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Differentiating:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{\mathrm{dQ}}{\mathrm{dt}}=\frac{\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}}}{\tau_{\mathrm{d}}}+\frac{\mathrm{d} \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}}}{\mathrm{dt}} \\
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{d}}=\frac{\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}}}{\tau_{\mathrm{d}}}+\frac{\mathrm{d} \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}}}{\mathrm{dt}}
\end{align*}
$$

This is known as the fundamental charge control equation for the $\mathrm{p}-\mathrm{n}$ junction, [28]. However charge flow due to expansion or retraction of the depletion region has not been considered in this equation. This is equivalent to charging and discharging the depletion capacitance. This effect can be neglected so long as the diode is forward biased but during commutation when the reverse voltage increases the charge control equation must be modified, [24]:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{d}}=\frac{\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}}}{\tau_{\mathrm{d}}}+\frac{\mathrm{d} \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}}}{\mathrm{dt}}-\frac{\mathrm{d}\left[\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{dep}}\left(\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{d}}\right) \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{d}}\right]}{\mathrm{dt}}
$$

Notice since $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{dep}}\left(\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{d}}\right)$ is a function of $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{d}}$, it is included in the differential. This capacitive displacement current influences the behavior of the diode during the "snap off" period. Equation $3.2-6$ can be used to model the diode to the point where reverse voltage begins to be supported.

The SPICE large signal modeling technique in reference to the diode turn off characteristics will now be discussed. Equations relating the reverse recovery performance in relation to circuit parameters and the minority carrier lifetime will be derived. However research has shown that the modeling technique used in SPICE does not represent the true process. Never the less it is important to establish the relationships so that they can be applied to simulation parameter setting. At the end of the section the true reverse recovery mechanism is discussed.

The relevant equations are also derived. These second set of equations are found to be similar in structure to those that apply to the SPICE diode model. In both cases the equations are implicit, requiring either a lookup table or a graphical means to solution, both are presented.

The large signal model used by SPICE is shown in Figure 3.3, [23]. A voltage dependent current source $\left(I_{d}\right)$ is connected in parallel with a voltage dependent capacitor $\left(\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{d}}\right)$. The capacitor charge at low $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{d}}$ is modeled as follows, [23]:

$$
\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}}=\tau_{\mathrm{d}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{d}}+\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{d}}(0) \int_{0}^{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{d}}}\left[1-\frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{d}}}{\phi_{0}}\right] \mathrm{dV}_{\mathrm{d}}
$$

For a diode $I_{d}$ is related to $V_{d}$ as follows, [23]:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{d}}=\eta \mathrm{I}_{0} \mathrm{e}\left[\frac{\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{d}}}{\eta \kappa_{\mathrm{t}}}-1\right] \\
& \mathrm{I}_{0}-\text { Reverse saturation current } \\
& \eta-\text { Constant dependent on the injection level } \\
& \kappa_{\mathrm{t}}-\text { Thermal voltage }\left(\approx 26 \mathrm{mV} @ 300^{\circ} \mathrm{K}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

For high forward current (normal for power diodes) the first term of equation 3.2-8 dominates:

$$
\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}}=\tau_{\mathrm{d}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{d}}
$$

Consider a reduction in forward current from $I_{a 1}$ to $I_{a 2}$. Assuming equilibrium conditions exist at $I_{q 1}$ then $I_{d}=I_{a 1}$; $V_{d}$ and $Q_{d}$ would be determined by $I_{d}$ via equations $3.2-8$ and 3.2-9.




Figure 3.3 Spice Simulation of Reverse Recovery

The excess stored charge at a forward current of $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{a} 1}$ would be given by:

$$
\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d} 1}=\tau_{\mathrm{d}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{a} 1}
$$

An instantaneous reduction in $I_{a}$ would cause no initial change in $Q_{d}$ and hence $V_{d}$ and $I_{d}$ are initially unchanged. As time proceeds a current ( $I_{d}-I_{a 2}$ ) flows to discharge $C_{d}$ until $I_{d}$ is again equal to $I_{a}$. Stored excess charges recombine until the forward current is again just supported. During the commutation process no reverse voltage across $C_{d}$ is supported until $Q_{d}$ is reduced to zero. After this the reverse voltage builds up rapidly as dictated by equations $3.2-8$ and $3.2-9$. If the commutation $\mathrm{dI}_{\mathrm{d}} / \mathrm{dt}$ is low compared with the rate of change of the recombination current, $\mathrm{dR}_{n} / \mathrm{dt}$. The lag in removal of stored charge is small and the diode will recover without significant reverse sweepout current. However if the $\mathrm{dI}_{\mathrm{d}} / \mathrm{dt}$ is much higher there will be a large amount of stored charge at the time when the diode current is reduced to zero.

This stored charge can support a reverse current (therefore no reverse voltage can be supported) which combines with the recombination process to reduce $Q_{d}$ to zero. The reverse current builds up at the rate determined by the external inductance and commutating voltage until $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}}$ is reduced to zero. At this time reverse voltage is supported. However due to the charging of the depletion capacitance up to the commutating voltage the current peaks at a slightly higher reverse current then this. The switch S1 of Figure 3.2 has to carry the reverse current, which is one undesirable effect of reverse recovery. It should also be pointed out that incorrectly designed $\mathrm{R}-\mathrm{C}$ snubbers will tend to augment the diode depletion capacitance and increase the peak current seen by the switch. Using equation 3-10 and $I_{d}(0)=I_{f}$ and a commutating $\mathrm{dI}_{\mathrm{d}} / \mathrm{dt}=\mathrm{m}$ the time required to reduce the excess stored charge to zero can be solved for as follows. The initial excess stored charge from equation $3.2-3$ is:

$$
\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}}(0)=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}} \tau_{\mathrm{d}}
$$

The current during the interval is forced to be:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{d}}(\mathrm{t})=-\mathrm{mt}+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}
$$

$\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}$ - Steady state forward current before commutation $m$ - Rate of decay of current $\left[\frac{d \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{d}}}{\mathrm{dt}}\right]$

From equations $3.2-6$ and 3.-13:

$$
-\mathrm{mt}+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}=\frac{\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}}(\mathrm{t})}{\tau_{\mathrm{d}}}+\frac{\mathrm{dQ}_{\mathrm{d}}(\mathrm{t})}{\mathrm{dt}}
$$

Solving this linear first order differential equation yields, [47]:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{ke} \\
& {\left[\frac{-\mathrm{t}}{\tau_{\mathrm{d}}}\right]} \\
& \mathrm{k} \text { - integration constant }-\mathrm{m} \tau_{\mathrm{d}} \mathrm{t}+\mathrm{m} \tau_{\mathrm{d}}^{2}+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}} \tau_{\mathrm{d}} \\
&
\end{aligned}
$$

Using equation $3.2-12, \mathrm{k}$ can be determined:

$$
\mathrm{k}=-\mathrm{m} \tau_{\mathrm{d}}{ }^{2}
$$

Therefore by substitution into equation $3.2-15$ :

$$
\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}}(\mathrm{t})=-\mathrm{m} \tau_{\mathrm{d}} \mathrm{e}^{\left[\frac{-\mathrm{t}}{\tau_{\mathrm{d}}}\right]}+-\mathrm{m} \tau_{\mathrm{d}} \mathrm{t}+\mathrm{m} \tau_{\mathrm{d}}{ }^{2}+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}} \tau_{\mathrm{d}}
$$

Solving for $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}}(\mathrm{t})=0$ and replacing t by $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}$ (Reverse blocking time) results in:

$$
\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}}{\mathrm{~m}}=\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}-\tau_{\mathrm{d}}\left[1+\mathrm{e}^{\left[\frac{-\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}}{\tau_{\mathrm{d}}}\right]}\right]
$$

This equation cannot be directly solved for $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}$, therefore an indirect method for determining $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}$ is proposed. The following symbology will be used:

$$
\begin{array}{lr}
\mathrm{T}_{0}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}}{\mathrm{~m}} & 3.2-19 \\
\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{x}}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}}{\mathrm{~m}} & 3.2-20 \\
\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{m}}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}}{\mathrm{~m}} & 3.2-21 \\
\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{x}}=\mathrm{T}_{0}+\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{m}} & 3.2-22 \\
& \\
\mathrm{~T}_{0}-\text { Forward Current Decay Time } \\
\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}-\text { Reverse Blocking Time } \\
\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{m}}-\text { Reverse Current Rise Time } \\
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}-\text { Peak reverse current during recovery } &
\end{array}
$$

These are described in Figure 3.4. Therefore substituting equations 3.2-19 and replacing $\tau_{\mathrm{d}}$ by $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{t}}$ (the SPICE Transit time parameter) equation 3.2-18 can be written as:

$$
\frac{\mathrm{T}_{0}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}}=\frac{\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}}-\left[1-\mathrm{e}^{\left[\frac{-\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}}\right]}\right]
$$

And by substitution of $3.2-22$ into $3.2-23$ :

$$
\frac{\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{m}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{x}}}=\frac{\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{t}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{x}}} \cdot\left[1-\mathrm{e}^{\left[\frac{-\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}}\right]}\right]
$$

Equation 3.2-24 can be used to determine an approximate value for the Transit Time from manufacturer's data. The equation $3.2-23$ can then be used to predict the reverse recovery characteristics for other operating conditions. The ratio $T_{m} / T_{x}$ of equation 3.2-24 can be found using manufacturer's data:

$$
\frac{T_{m}}{T_{\mathrm{x}}}=\frac{I_{\mathrm{rm}}}{I_{\mathrm{f}}+I_{\mathrm{rm}}}
$$

Equation $3.2-24$ can be solved by the use of the nomogram in Figure 3.4 The nomogram simply displays the relationship on $\log -\log$ scales allowing $T_{t} / T_{x}$ to be found. This could be done equally well using a a look up table. The reverse blocking time $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}$ is also available from the data sheet:

$$
\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}}{\mathrm{~m}}
$$

In some data sheets the Recovered Charge will be given. In this case it is important to determine if $Q_{1}, Q_{1}$ and $Q_{2}$ or $Q_{1}+Q_{2}$ of figure 3.4 are given:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{Q}_{1}-\text { the lag charge denoted } \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{s}} \\
& \mathrm{Q}_{2} \text { - the residual charge denoted } \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{f}} \\
& \mathrm{Q}_{1}+\mathrm{Q}_{2} \text { - the reverse recovery charge denoted } \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{rr}}
\end{aligned}
$$

If $Q_{1}$ is given the following can be applied to find $I_{r m}$ :

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}=\sqrt{2 \mathrm{Q}_{1} \mathrm{~m}}
$$



Figure 3.4 Minority Carrier Life Time According to SPICE using Manufacturers Data

If $Q_{r r}$ is assumed to be split evenly between $Q_{1}$ and $Q_{2}$ (which is the case for most soft recovery diodes), [34]:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}=\sqrt{\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{rr}} \mathrm{~m}}
$$

Some data sheets may give $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{rr}}$ and the Reverse Snap off Factor (RSF) as illustrated in Figure 3-1, [25]:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{RSF}=\frac{\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{m}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{r}}}=\frac{\mathrm{Q}_{2}}{\mathrm{Q}_{1}} \\
& \mathrm{Q}_{1}=\frac{\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{rr}}}{1+\mathrm{RSF}}
\end{align*}
$$

Having found $T_{t} / T_{x}$ from the nomogram and $T_{x}$ from 3.2-26 the minority carrier lifetime determined. As an aid $T_{x}$ has been plotted against $T_{t} / T_{x}$ for constant values of $T_{t}$ so that that the result can be obtained visually. A nomogram, shown in Figure 3.5, has also been formulated for equation 3.2-23, this can be used to estimate $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}$ and therefore $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}$ for any forward current and commutating $\mathrm{dI} / \mathrm{dt}$. The procedure is to calculate the forward current decay time $\left(\mathrm{T}_{0}\right)$ :

$$
\mathrm{T}_{0}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}}{\mathrm{~m}}
$$

Using the ratio $T_{0} / T_{t}$ the ratio $T_{x} / T_{t}$ is found and hence $I_{r m}$ is determined:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}=\mathrm{m} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{x}}-\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}
$$

The above analysis is based on the SPICE model of Figure 3.2. Three simulation runs were done using the circuit shown with a test diode $\left(D_{t}\right)$ with a Transit Time of $0.1 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ to verify the model.


Figure 3.5 Determination of Irm According to SPICE

The zero bias capacitance was set to zero to eliminate the effects of the depletion capacitance charge current. As indicated the peak reverse currents were consistent with the model. The SPICE model however does not represent the true reverse recovery mechanism. The SPICE model assumes that the reverse current can continue to increase until the total stored charge is removed. In reality the reverse current can only rise at a steady rate while it is being supported by a sufficiently high minority carrier concentration near the transition region boundary. At some time the concentration is insufficient and the rate of rise of reverse current reduces. At the same time the reverse voltage begins to rise. The actual peak reverse current attained will depend on the depletion capacitance characteristics and external components. The important point is that not all the stored charge is removed at the time of peak reverse current. This effect is amplified at high commutation $\mathrm{dI} / \mathrm{dt}$ as Figure 3-6 illustrates. The p region excess minority carrier concentration at steady state and at several instants during commutation for high and low $\mathrm{dI} / \mathrm{dt}$ recoveries are shown. Minority carrier conduction is dominated by diffusion and for the $p$ region from equation 3.1-1:

$$
J_{\mathrm{diff}}=q D_{\mathrm{n}} \frac{\mathrm{dn}_{\mathrm{p}}}{\mathrm{~d} x}
$$

The diffusion current is directed from areas of high to areas of low charge concentration. Because the conduction is only via minority carrier diffusion at the edge of the transition area $(x=0)$ it follows that the concentration gradient there is determined by the diode current. Hence after period $\mathrm{T}_{0}$ when the current has decayed to zero the gradient at $x=0$ will also be zero as indicated in Figure 3.6. After this time the current reverses and hence the slope reverses. At the end of period $T_{m}$, neglecting depletion capacitance effects, the maximum reverse current is attained which corresponds to the maximum reverse gradient and the concentration reaching zero at the transition region boundary. The charge $Q_{1}$ (lag Charge) is removed during $T_{m}$ and $Q_{2}$ (Residual Charge) remains, to be removed during $T_{r}$.


Figure 3.6 Excess Minority Carrier Concentration
During Reverse Recovery

The switching loss can be attributed to the removal of $Q_{2}$. When a high commutation $\mathrm{dI} / \mathrm{dt}$ is applied the minority carriers are quickly swept back across the transition region causing a depletion nearby, but in the middle regions carriers are removed by recombination and flow by diffusion which can be a much slower process. It is this time lag that causes the residual charge $Q_{2}$. It should also be noted that some of the initial stored charge is removed during $T_{0}$ due to recombination. In the case of the low $\mathrm{dI} / \mathrm{dt}$ recovery more charge is removed during $\mathrm{T}_{0}$ and $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{m}}$ due simply to the increased time available for recombination to occur. If the dI/dt is low enough the diode would be able to almost attain its equilibrium state throughout the forward current decay and the reverse recovery would be virtually non-existent Use of higher $\mathrm{dI} / \mathrm{dt}$ results in increased reverse current and increased residual charge $\left(\mathrm{Q}_{2}\right)$.

Relationships allowing the calculation of $I_{r m}$ from limited manufacturers data taking into account the existence of the residual charge will now be derived. The value of $I_{\text {rm }}$ is determined by the constraint that the reverse current must be sustained by adequate minority charge. During the commutation the reverse current is increasing while the excess minority charge is being reduced. The excess minority charge is determined by the charge control equation. The diode is in the forward biased state. The associated time constant will be denoted the forward biased minority carrier lifetime, $\tau_{\mathrm{f}}$. A point is reached where further increase in reverse current is not possible and snap off commences. At snap off reverse bias is established and current decays to zero. The diode now enters the reverse biased state. The excess charge during snap off is constrained to be proportional to the reverse current, [28]. The proportionality constant is the reverse biased minority carrier lifetime. This implies that:

$$
\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}}\left(\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{x}}\right)=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}} \tau_{\mathrm{r}}
$$

$\tau_{\mathrm{r}}-$ Reverse biased minority carrier lifetime

The ratio of the forward lifetime to the reverse lifetime, $\tau_{\mathrm{f}} / \tau_{\mathrm{r}}$, is a characteristic of the diode. To solve for $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}$ under the condition specified in equation 3.2-34 equation $3.2-17$ will be used with $\tau_{\mathrm{d}}$ being replaced by $\tau_{\mathrm{f}}$ :

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}} \tau_{\mathrm{r}}=-\mathrm{m} \tau_{\mathrm{f}}^{2} \mathrm{e}^{\left[\frac{-\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}}{\tau_{\mathrm{f}}}\right.}{ }^{2}+-\mathrm{m} \tau_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{x}}+\mathrm{m} \tau_{\mathrm{f}}^{2}+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}} \tau_{\mathrm{f}}
$$

Which can be reduced to:

$$
\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}}{\mathrm{~m}} \cdot \frac{\tau_{\mathrm{r}}}{\tau_{\mathrm{f}}}=-\tau_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{e}^{\left[\frac{-\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}}{\tau_{\mathrm{f}}}\right]}+-\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}+\tau_{\mathrm{f}}+\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}}{\mathrm{~m}}
$$

Let $\alpha=\frac{\tau_{\mathrm{f}}}{\tau_{\mathrm{r}}}$ and using 3.2-19 and 3.2-21

$$
\frac{\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{m}}}{\alpha}=-\tau_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{e}^{\left[\frac{-\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}}{\tau_{\mathrm{f}}}\right]}+-\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}+\tau_{\mathrm{f}}+\mathrm{T}_{0}
$$

Using equation 3.2-22 and replacing $\tau_{\mathrm{f}}$ by $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{t}}$ to be consistent with the original analysis the following equations can be written:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{T}_{0}=\frac{\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}}-\frac{\alpha}{1+\alpha}\left[1-\mathrm{e}^{\left[\frac{-\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}}\right]}\right] \\
& \frac{\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{m}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{x}}}=\frac{\alpha}{1+\alpha} \frac{\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{t}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{x}}}\left[1-\mathrm{e}^{\left[\frac{-\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}}\right]}\right]
\end{align*}
$$

The equations are only different from $3.2-23$ and $3.2-24$ by the factor $\frac{\alpha}{1+\alpha}$. It is known for power diodes that $\alpha$ is about 4, [24]. Therefore:

$$
\frac{\mathrm{T}_{0}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}}=\frac{\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}}-0.8\left[1-\mathrm{e}^{\left[\frac{-\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}}\right.}\right]
$$

$$
\frac{\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{m}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{x}}}=0.8 \frac{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{x}}}\left[1-\mathrm{e}^{\left(\frac{-\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}}\right]}\right]
$$

Nomograms for these modified equations have also been constructed and are displayed in Figures 3.7 and 3.8. These can be used in exactly the same manner as previously. The relationships have also been displayed in tabular form in Table 3.1.

Figure 3.9 shows a comparison of the $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}$ versus $\mathrm{dI} / \mathrm{dt}$ relationship for a commercial Ultra Fast Recovery Diode, BYT30 PI-1000, [20] and that predicted by equation 3.2-38 using equation 3.2-39 to estimate the $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{t}}$ parameter from data at the point marked "A". The modified model is shown to be very accurate for this diode. Diodes of various sizes from other manufacturers for which there has been sufficient data have also been tried. The model proved to be accurate for predicting $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}$ for varying $\mathrm{dI} / \mathrm{dt}$ and forward current.

The relationship between $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}} / \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{t}}$ and $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{o}} / \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{t}}$ displayed in Figure 3.8 on a $\log -\log$ scale is approximately linear. This means that the the following approximate equation can be written:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{T_{0}}{T_{t}}=C\left[\frac{T_{x}}{T_{t}}\right]^{n} \\
& n-\text { slope of the } \log -\log \text { relationship } \\
& C-\text { constant }
\end{aligned}
$$

This allows an approximate function relating $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}$ to $\mathrm{m}, \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}$ and $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{t}}$ to be derived. This relationship is found to be useful in the design process and is used in Chapter Four.

Substituting equations 3.2-19 and 3.2-20 gives:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}=\mathrm{C}^{-\frac{1}{\mathrm{n}}} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}^{\left(1-\frac{1}{\mathrm{n}}\right)} \mathrm{m}^{\left(1-\frac{1}{\mathrm{n}}\right)} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}^{\frac{1}{\mathrm{n}}}-\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}
$$

The value of n is found from evaluation of the slope in Figure 3.8 to be 1.36. Also $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{o}} / \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{t}}=0.49$ at $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}} / \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{t}}=1$ which means $\mathrm{C}=0.49$.

The minority carrier lifetime for power diodes is known to increase with temperature. It is therefore necessary to consider the influence of junction temperature in the calculation of $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}$. In practice it has been found that the maximum reverse recovery current increases almost linearly with temperature over the range of $25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $125^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ and is known to double for a $100^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ increase in junction temperature, [35]. Using this information the following equation can be written:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}\left(\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j} 2}\right)=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}\left(\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j} 1}\right)\left[1+\frac{\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j} 2}-\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j} 1}}{100}\right]
$$

The transit time for the DSE60-10A diodes can now be determined using table 3.1 and manufacturer's data: $I_{r m}=32 \mathrm{Amps} @ I_{f}=60 \mathrm{Amps} ; m=480 \mathrm{Amps} / \mu \mathrm{S} ; \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j}}=$ $100^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$.

The relationship will be evaluated at $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j}}=125^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ hence equation $3.2-42$ will be used to find $I_{r m}$ for this temperature:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}\left(\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j} 2}\right)=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}\left(\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j} 1}\right)\left[1+\frac{\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j} 2}-\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j} 1}}{100}\right] \\
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}(125)=32 \times\left[1+\frac{125-100}{100}\right]=40 \mathrm{Amps}
\end{aligned}
$$



Figure 3.7. Minority Carrier Life Time According to Modified Model using Manufacturer's Data


Figure 3.8 Determination of Irm Using Modified Model

| $\frac{T_{x}}{T_{t}}$ | $\frac{T_{m}}{T_{x}}$ | $\frac{T_{0}}{T_{t}}$ | $\frac{T_{x}}{T_{t}}$ | $\frac{T_{m}}{T_{x}}$ | $\frac{T_{0}}{T_{t}}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0.10 | 0.76 | 0.02 | 1.00 | 0.51 | 0.49 |
| 0.12 | 0.75 | 0.03 | 1.20 | 0.47 | 0.64 |
| 0.14 | 0.75 | 0.04 | 1.40 | 0.43 | 0.80 |
| 0.16 | 0.74 | 0.04 | 1.60 | 0.40 | 0.96 |
| 0.18 | 0.73 | 0.05 | 1.80 | 0.37 | 1.13 |
| 0.20 | 0.73 | 0.05 | 2.00 | 0.35 | 1.31 |
| 0.22 | 0.72 | 0.06 | 2.60 | 0.28 | 1.86 |
| 0.28 | 0.70 | 0.08 | 2.80 | 0.27 | 2.05 |
| 0.30 | 0.69 | 0.09 | 3.00 | 0.25 | 2.24 |
| 0.32 | 0.68 | 0.10 | 3.20 | 0.24 | 2.43 |
| 0.34 | 0.68 | 0.11 | 3.40 | 0.23 | 2.63 |
| 0.36 | 0.67 | 0.12 | 3.60 | 0.22 | 2.82 |
| 0.38 | 0.67 | 0.13 | 3.80 | 0.21 | 3.02 |
| 0.40 | 0.66 | 0.14 | 4.00 | 0.20 | 3.21 |
| 0.42 | 0.65 | 0.15 | 4.20 | 0.19 | 3.41 |
| 0.44 | 0.65 | 0.16 | 4.40 | 0.18 | 3.61 |
| 0.46 | 0.64 | 0.17 | 4.60 | 0.17 | 3.81 |
| 0.48 | 0.64 | 0.18 | 4.80 | 0.17 | 4.01 |
| 0.50 | 0.63 | 0.19 | 5.00 | 0.16 | 4.21 |
| 0.52 | 0.62 | 0.20 | 5.20 | 0.15 | 4.40 |
| 0.54 | 0.62 | 0.21 | 5.40 | 0.15 | 4.60 |
| 0.56 | 0.61 | 0.22 | 5.60 | 0.14 | 4.80 |
| 0.58 | 0.61 | 0.23 | 5.80 | 0.14 | 5.00 |
| 0.60 | 0.60 | 0.24 | 6.00 | 0.13 | 5.20 |
| 0.62 | 0.60 | 0.25 | 6.20 | 0.13 | 5.40 |
| 0.64 | 0.59 | 0.26 | 6.40 | 0.12 | 5.60 |
| 0.66 | 0.59 | 0.27 | 6.60 | 0.12 | 5.80 |
| 0.68 | 0.58 | 0.29 | 6.80 | 0.12 | 6.00 |
| 0.70 | 0.58 | 0.30 | 7.00 | 0.11 | 6.20 |
| 0.72 | 0.57 | 0.31 | 7.20 | 0.11 | 6.40 |
| 0.74 | 0.57 | 0.32 | 7.40 | 0.11 | 6.60 |
| 0.76 | 0.56 | 0.33 | 7.60 | 0.11 | 6.80 |
| 0.78 | 0.56 | 0.35 | 7.80 | 0.10 | 7.00 |
| 0.80 | 0.55 | 0.36 | 8.00 | 0.10 | 7.20 |
| 0.82 | 0.55 | 0.37 | 8.20 | 0.10 | 7.40 |
| 0.84 | 0.54 | 0.39 | 8.40 | 0.10 | 7.60 |
| 0.86 | 0.54 | 0.40 | 8.60 | 0.09 | 7.80 |
| 0.88 | 0.53 | 0.41 | 8.80 | 0.09 | 8.00 |
| 0.90 | 0.53 | 0.43 | 9.00 | 0.09 | 8.20 |
| 0.92 | 0.52 | 0.44 | 9.20 | 0.09 | 8.40 |
| 0.94 | 0.52 | 0.45 | 9.40 | 0.09 | 8.60 |
| 0.96 | 0.51 | 0.47 | 9.60 | 0.08 | 8.80 |
| 0.98 | 0.51 | 0.48 | 9.80 | 0.08 | 9.00 |
| 1.00 | 0.51 | 0.49 | 10.00 | 0.08 | 9.20 |

TABLE 3.1 POWER DIODE REVERSE RECOVERY LOOKUP TABLE


Figure 3.9 Commercial Diode Versus Model Comparison

From equation $3.2-25 \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{m}} / \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}$ is calculated:

$$
\frac{T_{m}}{T_{x}}=\frac{I_{\mathrm{rm}}}{I_{f}+I_{r m}}=\frac{40}{60+40}=0.4
$$

From Table 3.1 $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}} / \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{t}}$ for $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{m}} / \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}=0.4$ is found to be 1.6. The value of $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{t}}$ using equation $3.2-20$ will be given by:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{t}}=\frac{\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{t}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{x}}} \frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}}{\mathrm{~m}} \\
& \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}=0.625 \times \frac{60+40}{480}=0.13 \mu \mathrm{~S}
\end{aligned}
$$

Substituting $T_{t}, C$ and $n$ into equation $3.2-41$ yields:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}=\mathrm{C}^{-\frac{1}{\mathrm{n}}} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}^{\left(1-\frac{1}{\mathrm{n}}\right)} \mathrm{m}^{\left(1-\frac{1}{\mathrm{n}}\right)} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}^{\frac{1}{\mathrm{n}}}-\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}} \\
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}=1.69 \times 0.583 \times \mathrm{m}^{0.265} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}^{0.735}-\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}} \\
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}=0.985 \mathrm{~m}^{0.265} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}^{0.735}-\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}} \\
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}} \approx \mathrm{~m}^{0.265} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}^{0.735}-\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}} @ \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j}}=125^{\circ} \mathrm{C}
\end{align*}
$$

This relationship gives valid results when $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}} / \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{t}}$ is in the range of 0.3 to 3 . This relationship will be used in Chapter Four. The object of finding the peak reverse current and the recovered charge is to evaluate the peak current stress on other devices and the reverse recovery power loss for the diode.

The reverse recovery loss will now be considered. The power dissipation during the reverse recovery period will be given by:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{rr}}=\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}} \int_{0}^{\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{rr}}} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{d}}(\mathrm{t}) \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{d}}(\mathrm{t}) \mathrm{dt} \\
& \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{rr}}-\text { Reverse recovery power loss } \\
& \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{rr}}-\text { Reverse recovery Time }\left(\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{m}}+\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{d}}\right) \\
& \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}-\text { Switching frequency }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
3.2-44
$$

In this case both $V_{d}$ and $I_{d}$ are functions of time.

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{d}}=\frac{\mathrm{d} \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{d}}}{\mathrm{dt}}
$$

Therefore:

$$
P_{r r}=f_{s} \int_{0}^{Q_{2}} V_{d} d Q_{d}
$$

The diode voltage is seen as a function of the stored charge. During period $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{m}}$ the diode voltage is very low and can be neglected. During period $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{d}}$ the reverse voltage rises and will reach a voltage level denoted $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{rm}}$. The voltage rise characteristic is determined by external circuit components and the diodes own properties. It is normal to assume that the voltage rises linearly during $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{d}}$ from zero to $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{rm}}$ so the average voltage at which charge is removed is $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{rm}} / 2$. Therefore Equation 3.2-45 can be reduced to:

$$
\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{rr}}=\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}} \frac{\mathrm{E}}{2} \mathrm{Q}_{2}
$$

Generally for soft recovery diodes $Q_{2}$ is approximately the same as $Q_{1}$ and so some manufacturers recommend, [20]:

$$
P_{r r}=\frac{f_{\mathrm{s}} E Q_{\mathrm{rr}}}{4}
$$

However in for this design it will be assumed that the reverse voltage rises instantaneously to the value of E and hence:

$$
\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{rr}}=\frac{\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{S}} \mathrm{E} \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{rr}}}{2}
$$

In practice the rising reverse voltage characteristic is a function of the external snubbing networks. The diode snubbing philosophy has been to provide small RC snubbers with the peak voltage being clamped to the steady state value. The reverse voltage is therefore likely to rise relatively quickly. Assuming instantaneous rise in diode reverse voltage therefore better models the actual circumstances. Equation 3.2-48 will yield a slightly conservative result whereas equation $3.2-47$ would be an under estimate.

### 3.3 Power Diode Turn On Characteristics

In power electronic circuits the diode forward current is generally forced and the voltage developed across the diode is a function of its internal processes. Normally the current during turn on increases at a rate determined by the turn off characteristics of another semiconductor device. This could be another diode undergoing snap off or a controlled device being turned off. During the application of forward current to a non-conducting diode the peak forward voltage developed can be far in excess of that for the conducting state. The peak voltage increases with an increasing rate of rise of forward current.

A typical forward recovery transient is shown in Figure 3.10. Just before the application of forward current the depletion region exists due to reverse voltage as illustrated in Figure 3.2. Due to the asymmetrical doping the depletion region in the lightly doped p section will be much wider then that in the $\mathrm{n}^{+}$section. Once forward current commences electrons from the $\mathrm{n}^{+}$region are almost immediately injected into the p region. The minority carrier density quickly grows and recombination with majority carriers commences. The already depleted majority carrier concentration is further reduced creating greater negative space charge near the junction. Minority carriers also flow by diffusion due to the concentration gradient which is being established. At the p region ohmic contact, holes are being injected at an equally high rate and because the minority carrier concentration in this area, at this time is low, recombination is also low. An electric field is established across the p region driving majority carriers towards the junction and minority carriers towards the ohmic contact. Charge carriers also move by diffusion as concentration gradients are established. The typical minority charge distribution progress with time during a forward current transient is shown in Figure 3.10. The carriers can only flow and reach a steady state distribution by diffusion and drift.

Voltage and Current Transient



Figure 3.10 Typical Diode Forward Recovery Transient

If the rate of rise of forward current is low, the charge distribution can closely follow the rising current and diffusion processes dominate. Under these conditions the necessary electric field is low. At high rates of rise of forward current significant electric field levels are established making the drift component of charge flow dominate, [31].

To achieve the charge distribution necessary for steady state conduction, with conductivity modulation, a certain amount of charge has to be transported within the diode. The electric field is predominantly responsible for this at high rates of increase of forward current. According to equation 3.1-2 charge flow due drift is directly proportional to the electric field strength. It follows that a certain electric field, time product is necessary to establish the necessary charge distribution and hence conductivity modulation. This equates to a volt-second product across the diode. This makes the diode behave like an inductor during initial turn on if the rate of rise of current is high. The transient is often modeled using an $\mathrm{R}-\mathrm{L}$ series circuit with R being a function of the forward current, [24]. The voltage generated can be substantial with peak forward voltages in the region of 150 V being possible for some diodes with 30 V being typical of most fast recovery diodes, [20-22,31].

From observation of equation $3.1-2$ it is seen that the charge flow due to drift is proportional to electric field and charge concentration. Since the charge concentration on average is low throughout the p region in the early stages of the transient the electric field will reach high levels. Once the charge builds up the electric field reduces and the diode effectively becomes more conductive (conductivity modulated). A high rate of increase of current will tend to cause a high forward voltage to initially develop but the time for which this is sustained is short. A lower rate of rise of current which would cause less forward voltage to be developed but for a longer time. If the forward current reaches its final value while the internal charge structure is still in a transient state then its magnitude as well as rate of rise would affect the peak voltage.

Charge flow due to drift reaches a saturation level at electric field strengths around $10^{4} \mathrm{~V} / \mathrm{cm}$. Beyond this the field begins to increase even more rapidly. However at field strengths of around $10^{5} \mathrm{~V} / \mathrm{cm}$ minority carriers gain sufficient energy to excite minority carriers from the lattice during collisions and avalanche multiplication occurs in the forward direction. The generation of additional charge assists the semiconductor into conductivity modulation, and the forward voltage does not significantly increase beyond this level, [31].

An important point that must be made is that very fast reverse recovery diodes tend to generate high forward voltage transients. This is an unfortunate characteristic since in high frequency high power converters good reverse and forward recovery performance are both desirable. The reason is that short minority carrier life times conflict with the establishment of conductivity modulation.

The DSE60-10A diode had excellent reverse recovery performance but exhibited reasonably poor forward recovery performance. Unfortunately the manufacturer neglected to include this information in the data sheet, [19]. The major consequences of high forward recovery voltages is the increased voltage stress applied to other circuit components.

The effect of diode forward recovery in the buck converter cell displayed in Figure 3-11 will be examined. First forward recovery in diode Ds will be discussed. Consider the the period where the IGBT is switched off. Load current $I_{L}$ is transferred from the IGBT to the Snubber Diode $D_{s}$ via the snubber capacitor $C_{s}$. The rate of diversion is normally assumed to be forced by the IGBT and in this case is approximately $300 \mathrm{~A} / \mu \mathrm{S}$. Diode $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{s}}$ is forced to conduct this current. The rate of rise of voltage across the IGBT is controlled by the snubber capacitor.


Figure 3.11 Circuit Effects of Diode Forward Recovery

However during the current transfer period the forward recovery voltage across $D_{s}$ and the voltage developed across the wiring inductance causes a step in the initial IGBT voltage. Great effort was put into the construction and layout designs to reduce wiring inductance since even an inductance as low as $0.1 \mu \mathrm{H}$, which is equivalent to approximately 100 mm of standard wire, would develop 30 V across it. The inductance of the snubber circuit is estimated to be approximately $0.2 \mu \mathrm{H}$. The actual step voltage across the IGBT was found to be approximately 240 V . The circuit inductance would account 60 V of this and the diode forward recovery would account for the other 180 V . The diode $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{s}}$ is actually two DSE1 60-10A diodes in series so the peak forward voltage per diode at a $\mathrm{dI}_{\mathrm{f}} / \mathrm{dt}$ of $300 \mathrm{~A} / \mu \mathrm{S}$ would be approximately 90 V . The direct consequences of the step voltage on the IGBT is increased turn off loss.

Secondly diode forward recovery is also experienced in the clamp diode $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{c}}$. In this case once the the voltage across the IGBT exceeds ( $2 \mathrm{E}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}$ ) current will be diverted from $D_{s}$ to $D_{c}$. The diversion relationship is a function of the rising capacitor voltage and the circuit inductance and so is more complex than the first case and beyond the scope of the present discussion. Suffice it to say that the effective diversion rate is much lower than the first case and so the forward recovery is also much smaller.

The third section of the circuit where forward recovery has an effect is the reverse voltage overshoot on the freewheel diode $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{f}}$ caused by the diode $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{x}}$. Consider the period when the IGBT switches on, the current in $D_{f}$ decreases at a rate determined by the supply voltage (2E) and the commutating inductance $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$. Since $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$ is $2 \mu \mathrm{H}$ and the nominal supply voltage is 560 V the rate of decay of current is $280 \mathrm{~A} / \mu \mathrm{S}$. The maximum reverse recovery current flowing in $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{f}}$ as will be shown in the next chapter is nominally 30 A for a load current of 100 A . This current, once $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{f}}$ snaps off, is diverted into $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{x}}$ and the energy stored in $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{x}}$ is dissipated in $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{x}}$.

The snap off rate of $D_{f}$ determines the rate of increase of current in $D_{x}$ and so the peak forward voltage. The snap off rate is estimated to be $300 \mathrm{~A} / \mu \mathrm{S}$. The peak forward voltage therefore should be around 90 V as it was in the previous case. Actual measurements verified the forward recovery voltage.

Attempts were made to reduce the peak forward recovery voltage by placing two diodes in parallel. It was reasoned that $\mathrm{dI} / \mathrm{dt}$ for diode would be halved and therefore the peak voltage should be reduced. The actual outcome was that there was little or no change. Further to this multiple parallel diodes were trialled, only after the current was shared over six diodes did any real reduction occur. It is thought that the reason for this is that the diodes avalanche in the forward direction down to a dI/dt of $60 \mathrm{~A} / \mu \mathrm{S}$. This is particularly poor, but is a result of the manufacturer having optimised the reverse recovery performance. Combined with the effects of the circuit inductance and the charging of $C_{x}$ the total overshoot voltage on the diodes was 130 V .

This explanation is presented in hindsight since no appreciation was had of severity of the forward recovery transient for these diodes until they were actually tested. Total peak reverse voltage across $D_{f}$ was found to be 690 V at the nominal bus voltage and a load of 75 A . Although this was well below the maximum reverse rating, at the maximum load and bus voltage it could be expected that it would exceed 800 V . Another influencing factor is the junction temperature. Although it is not well documented forward recovery voltage is known to increase with temperature, [36]. It was believed that there was insufficient margin in this design. The decision was made to modify $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{f}}$, which was originally six DSE1 60-10A diodes in parallel, to 12 diodes in a series parallel configuration to provide the additional margin. The disadvantage of this modification is increased conduction power loss.

### 3.4 Power Diode Forward Conduction Characteristics

Because power diodes almost universally are operating in the high level injection mode additional voltage apart from the junction potential is dropped across the diode. This is due to the electric field, required to transport majority carriers, building up to significant levels during high level injection. This voltage drop is close to being proportional to current and hence is modeled as simple series resistance $\left(R_{f}\right)$. The total diode forward voltage is then given by:

$$
\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{f}}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{to}}+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}
$$

And therefore the conduction loss will be:

$$
\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{c}}=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{t} 0}+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}^{2} \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}
$$

For the DSEI 60-10A diode:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{to}}=1.4 \mathrm{~V} @ \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j}}=150^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \\
& \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}=6 \mathrm{~m} \Omega @ \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j}}=150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}
\end{aligned}
$$

It is known that $V_{t o}$ decreases with temperature while $R_{f}$ can either increase or decrease slightly with temperature depending on the diode structure. Unfortunately no data was given for the DSEI $60-10 \mathrm{~A}$ to indicate the temperature dependence of $\mathrm{V}_{\text {to }}$ and $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}$. Observation of data for similar diodes indicated that it would be safe to assume that $R_{f}$ would be constant and in the worst case $V_{\text {to }}$ would increase at $3 \mathrm{mV} /{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ as temperature is reduced, $[20-22,37]$. Therefore:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{to}}=-3 \times 10^{-3} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j}}+1.85 \\
& \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{c}}=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{favg}}\left[-3 \times 10^{-3} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j}}+1.85\right]+6 \times 10^{-3} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{frms}}^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

The forward voltage drop is quite high compared with normal power diodes. This is normal for high voltage diodes with low minority carrier lifetimes.

Light doping as well as longer base structures are required to obtain the reverse voltage rating. Both these tend to increase the minority carrier lifetime. To keep the minority carrier lifetime low, gold is often diffused into the silicon and produces a "trapping site" for minority carriers hence reducing there lifetime. However the reduction of minority carrier lifetime reduces the conductivity modulation effect and so contributes to increased forward drop, [28]. As already pointed out the Forward recovery characteristics also tend to suffer in high voltage low lifetime power diodes. The manufacture of high voltage high speed power diodes is a difficult task and in fact impossible using the normal $p-n$ structure. The $p-i-n$ is generally used in high voltage high speed diodes. The analysis of the $p-i-n$ structure is more complex but the final results are similar. The material presented covering reverse recovery and forward recovery although based on a $p-n$ structure is still quite valid, [24].

### 3.5 IGBT Characteristics

The insulated gate bipolar transistor is a recently developed power semiconductor device which shows great promise in the low and medium power range. The device selected for this converter is the TOSHIBA MG200Q1US1 IGBT which has a maximum continuous collector current of 200A and a maximum forward blocking voltage of $1200 \mathrm{~V},[8]$.

At first sight the device current rating would seem excessive for this application as the maximum continuous current is 100 A . However in high frequency converters despite the use of snubbing systems switching loss becomes significant. This means the reduction of the conduction losses is necessary to keep the total losses and hence the cooling requirements to a practical level. The 200A rated IGBT gives the advantage of a lower forward voltage drop and hence lower conduction loss than a 100A device at the same load. The IGBT's internal structure as shown in Figure 3.12 can be modeled by a n-channel enhancement mosfet driving a pnp transistor, [8].


Figure 3.12 Insulated Gate Bi-Polar Transistor Operation

Application of a gate to emitter voltage causes an $n$-channel to be established between each $\mathrm{n}^{+}$layer and the $\mathrm{n}^{-}$layer through the p layer. The top $\mathrm{p}^{+} \mathrm{n}^{-}$ junction is forward biased causing injection of holes into the $\mathrm{n}^{-}$region which become minority carriers. A fraction of these will recombine with electrons in the $\mathrm{n}^{-}$ layer and hence contribute to the $n$-channel electron current. The greater fraction of the minority carriers are swept across the second $\mathrm{p}-\mathrm{n}$ junction and on to the emitter. At high current densities the minority carrier density in the $\mathrm{n}^{-}$layer reaches a level at which, in order to preserve charge neutrality, the majority carrier concentration becomes significantly increased, the result being increased conductivity, ie Conductivity Modulation, [8]. The drain resistance of the mosfet is effectively modulated by the collector current. The pnp transistor base drive current automatically adjusts in relation to the collector current with the collector emitter voltage drop being maintained low. This gives the IGBT a lower forward drop then an equivalent mosfet. In addition to this the minority carrier storage is controlled since the pnp transistor is never overdriven with its collector base junction becoming forward biased. Hence the storage time can be kept low. For this device the storage time is approximately 500 nS , [8]. For an equivalently rated bipolar switching transistor the storage time would be around $10 \mu \mathrm{~S}$, which is unworkable in this application.

### 3.6 IGBT Conduction Power Loss

The on-state forward characteristics can be modeled by a fixed voltage source in series with a resistance. Therefore the forward voltage is given by:

$$
V_{f}=V_{t o}+R_{f} I_{f}
$$

The parameters $\mathrm{V}_{\text {to }}$ and $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}$ are functions of the device case temperature. From [8]:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{t} 0}=-6 \times 10^{-3} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{c}}+225 \\
& \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}=9 \times 10^{-6} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{c}}+4.3 \times 10^{-3} \\
& \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{c}}-\text { Device case temperature in }{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}
\end{align*}
$$

From equations $3.6-1,3.6-2$ and $3.6-3$ :

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{c}} & =\left(-6 \times 10^{-3} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{c}}+2.25\right) \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{favg}} \\
& +\left(9 \times 10^{-6} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{c}}+4.3 \times 10^{-3}\right) \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{frms}}^{2}
\end{align*}
$$

### 3.7 IGBT Switching Power Loss

The IGBT turn on and turn off loss have been greatly reduced by the use of external snubbing and clamping networks. However the switching loss is still significant compared with the conduction loss and therefore must be considered. At turn on the diversion of load current from the freewheel diodes to the IGBT is determined by the voltage applied across $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$. Assuming the IGBT turned on instantly the diversion rate would be $280 \mathrm{~A} / \mu \mathrm{S}$ for a supply voltage of 560 V . In reality the IGBT current rise time is $150 \mathrm{nS},[8]$. At a final collector current of 100 A this would result in a maximum turn on $\mathrm{dI} / \mathrm{dt}$ of $667 \mathrm{~A} / \mu \mathrm{S}$. The required $\mathrm{dI} / \mathrm{dt}$ of $280 \mathrm{~A} / \mu \mathrm{S}$ is substantially below this. The IGBT turn on voltage will therefore collapse over 150 nS . The current rise characteristic would then be determined by the collector emitter voltage decay. Assuming a linear fall in voltage from the supply voltage 2 E to zero over 150 nS the collector voltage would be given by:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ce}}=\frac{-2 \mathrm{E}}{t_{\mathrm{r}}} \mathrm{t}+2 \mathrm{E} \\
& t_{\mathrm{r}}-\text { Rise Time }
\end{align*}
$$

The voltage across $L_{f}$ will be given by:

$$
\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}}=\frac{2 \mathrm{E}}{t_{\mathrm{r}}} \mathrm{t}
$$

The diverted current is therefore:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{c}}=\frac{1}{\mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}}} \int \frac{2 \mathrm{E}}{t_{\mathrm{r}}} \mathrm{tdt}
$$

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{c}}=\frac{1}{\mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}}} \frac{2 \mathrm{E}}{t_{\mathrm{r}}} \frac{\mathrm{t}^{2}}{2}
$$

The turn-on power loss will be found from:

$$
\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s} 1}=\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}} \int_{0}^{t_{\mathrm{r}}} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{ce}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{c}} \mathrm{dt}
$$

$$
\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}-\text { switch frequency }
$$

Substituting equations $3.7-1$ and $3.7-3$ :

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s} 1}=\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}} \int_{0}^{t_{\mathrm{r}}}\left[-\frac{2 \mathrm{E}}{t_{\mathrm{r}}} \mathrm{t}+2 \mathrm{E}\right]\left[\frac{1}{\mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}}} \frac{2 \mathrm{E}}{t_{\mathrm{r}}} \frac{\mathrm{t}^{2}}{2}\right] \mathrm{dt} \\
& \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s} 1}=\frac{2 \mathrm{E}^{2} \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}}{t_{\mathrm{r}}^{2} \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}}} \int_{0}^{t_{\mathrm{r}}}\left(t_{\mathrm{r}} \mathrm{t}^{2}-\mathrm{t}^{3}\right) \mathrm{dt} \\
& \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s} 1}=\frac{2 \mathrm{E}^{2} \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}}{t_{\mathrm{r}}^{2} \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}}} \times \frac{t_{\mathrm{r}}^{4}}{12} \\
& \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s} 1}=\frac{\mathrm{E}^{2} \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}} t_{\mathrm{r}}^{2}}{6 \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}}}
\end{align*}
$$

The analysis above assumes that the final collector current is not reached within the rise time $\left(t_{r}\right)$. This is justified for the majority of the load range. For low loads equation 3.7-4 gives a conservative result.

There is another component of turn on loss that has not been considered in the above analysis. The collector emitter voltage decays to a low level within $t_{\mathrm{r}}$ but not to the final steady state value.

TEKTRONIX 2232


It is thought that a period must elapse before full conductivity modulation is achieved. Figure 3-13 shows an actual oscillograph trace of $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ce}}$ for a load current of 75 A . After the $t_{\mathrm{r}}$ period is complete the forward voltage tails off at a much slower rate from approximately 35 V to the steady state value over $0.4 \mu \mathrm{~S}$. As will be seen in Chapter Four this represents a significant loss, however from the data presented in, [8] it is impossible to predict. An attempt to estimate it is carried out in Chapter Four.

The IGBT turn off is characterised by a short storage period during which time the minority carrier concentration declines. A point is reached where the full load current is no longer sustainable and the collector current begins to decline over a period $t_{f}$. From [8] it can be seen that the fall time is essentially constant at approximately 200 nS over the range 40 to 200 A . During the fall time load current is diverted to snubber capacitor $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ via diode $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{s}}$. The initial voltage across the capacitor has been reset to E such that the initial IGBT voltage is zero. If it is assumed that the IGBT current decays linearly to zero over $t_{f}$ the snubber current will be given by:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{c}_{\mathrm{s}}}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}{t_{\mathrm{f}}} \mathrm{t} \\
& 0 \leq \mathrm{t} \leq t_{\mathrm{f}}
\end{align*}
$$

Therefore:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{c}_{\mathrm{s}}}(\mathrm{t})=-\frac{1}{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}} \int_{0}^{\mathrm{t}} \frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}{t_{\mathrm{f}}} \mathrm{tdt}+\mathrm{E} \\
& \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{ce}}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{E}-\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}_{\mathrm{s}}}(\mathrm{t})
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ce}}(\mathrm{t})=\frac{1}{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}} \int \frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}{t_{\mathrm{f}}} \mathrm{tdt} \\
& \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{ce}}(\mathrm{t})=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}} \mathrm{t}^{2}}{2 t_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}
\end{align*}
$$

The power dissipation due to the switch off transient will be given by:

$$
\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s} 3}=\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}} \int_{0}^{t_{\mathrm{f}}} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{ce}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{c}}(\mathrm{t}) \mathrm{dt}
$$

The collector current $I_{c}(t)$ is given by:

$$
\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{c}}(\mathrm{t})={ }^{-\mathrm{I}} \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{L}} \mathrm{t}+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}
$$

From 3.6-57, 3.6-58 and 3.7-7:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s} 3}=\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}} \int_{0}^{t_{\mathrm{f}}} \frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}} \mathrm{t}^{2}}{2 t_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}\left[-\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}} \mathrm{t}+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}\right] \mathrm{dt} \\
& \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s} 3}=\frac{\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}^{2} t_{\mathrm{f}}^{2}}{24 \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}
\end{align*}
$$

However this analysis does not account for the effect of the forward recovery of diode $D_{s}$ on the IGBT switch off loss as discussed in Section 3.3. Since no data is given for the forward recovery performance of the diodes, results from the test chopper will be used. Examination of the mechanism involved indicates that the volt-second area product to obtain full conduction is approximately constant for a given diode. Test results showed that for these diodes $3 \mathrm{~V} \mu \mathrm{~S}$ was required for conduction to occur.

The forward recovery period and maximum voltage is controlled by auxiliary RC snubbers across $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{s}}$ and the IGBT, with the ( $\mathrm{V} \mu \mathrm{S}$ ) remaining approximately constant. Increasing the snubber capacitance will reduce the peak voltage but extend the period of the recovery. Increased capacitance results in increased series resistor power loss. Hence there are practical limits to the size of the auxiliary snubbers. For the auxiliary snubbers used the forward recovery period was found to be in the order of 50 nS . Within this period at a rate of decay of $280 \mathrm{~A} / \mu \mathrm{S}$ the collector current would have only reduced by 14 A . As a conservative estimate it will be assumed that the diode forward recovery is impressed on the IGBT at the full load current. Therefore:

$$
\begin{align*}
& P_{\mathrm{s} 4}=\psi_{\mathrm{d}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}} \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{S}} \\
& \psi_{\mathrm{d}} \text { - Diode Forward Recovery Volt-Second product }(3 \mathrm{~V} \mu \mathrm{~S})
\end{align*}
$$

The concepts and results developed above will be applied in Chapter Four to calculate the IGBT loss as part of the power circuit design.

## 4. POWER CIRCUIT DESIGN

In this chapter the the detailed design of the positive buck converter is presented. The design of the negative buck converter is identical except that the circuit is inverted. The design of power electronic converters, because of the complex interdependence of component values, is an involved task. Normally many iterations are conducted before the design is complete. Rather than presenting the design process as it was carried out, the selected component values are presented and their choice is verified. The relevant design equations are developed and the methodology is explained.

Two important components are the main snubber capacitor, $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$, and the $\mathrm{dI} / \mathrm{dt}$ limiting inductor, $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$. These two components either directly or indirectly influence the design of much of the remaining converter. The first section of the chapter is devoted to a discussion of the selection of $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ and $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$.

The converter has been divided into functional modules. The design and stress levels are examined for all the major components in each module. In reference to Figure 4.1 These include:
(a) The snubber module including $\mathrm{C}_{s}, \mathrm{D}_{s}$ and the capacitor resonant resetting circuit including $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{r}}$ and $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{r}}$.
(b) The clamp module including $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{c}}$ and the SOI.
(c) The freewheel diode module including $D_{f}, L_{f}, D_{x}, C_{x}$ and $R_{x}$.
(d) The IGBT module.


Figure 4.1 Simplified Positive Buck Converter Cell

As part of the clamp module a circuit description of the SOI is given and its operation is discussed. The IGBT module includes an operational description of the gate drive circuit.

The overall power loss is calculated for the rated output current of 100 A at the nominal bus voltage of 560 V for $50 \%$ duty cycle. This value is used to size the heatsinks and the forced cooling air requirement.

At the conclusion of the chapter results from the prototype buck converter are presented.

### 4.1 General Considerations

It is impractical to repeat the design process in its entirety in this chapter. Instead the final component selections will be presented and demonstrated to be appropriate according to the major criteria involved. The maximum voltage, current and thermal stresses, which ever is applicable will be calculated under the worst case operating condition for the particular component.

Since the major power dissipating components are mounted on a common heatsink the temperature of this heatsink is required to be known to be able to complete many of the calculations. This temperature will be assumed to be $80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ and the total power dissipation at rated output and nominal operating conditions will be calculated and used to size the heatsink.

Following is a list of values of the major components and important parameters as implemented in the final design which will be used in the subsequent sections:

Assumed main heatsink temperature $\left(\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{h}}\right)=80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$
Minimum IGBT on time $\left(\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{mn}}\right)=2.5 \mu \mathrm{~S}$

Minimum IGBT off time $\left(\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{mf}}\right)=2.5 \mu \mathrm{~S}$
Supply voltage $(E)=280 \mathrm{Vdc} \pm 20 \%$
Clamping voltage $\left(\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}\right)=\frac{13}{28} \times \mathrm{E}$
Freewheel diode commutating inductor $\left(L_{f}\right)=2.0 \mu \mathrm{H}$
Freewheel diode clamping capacitor $\left(\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{x}}\right)=0.9 \mu \mathrm{~F}$
Freewhweel diode clamping resistor $\left(\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{x}}\right)=23.5 \Omega$
IGBT snubber capacitor $\left(\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}\right)=0.05 \mu \mathrm{~F}$
Snubber resonant reversing inductor $\left(\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{r}}\right)=8 \mu \mathrm{H}$
Switching frequency $\left(\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}\right)=50 \mathrm{kHz}$
Switching period $(T)=20 \mu \mathrm{~S}$
IGBT rise time $\left(t_{r}\right)=150 \mathrm{nS}$
IGBT fall time $\left(t_{\mathrm{f}}\right)=200 \mathrm{nS}$

First the selection of $L_{f}$ and $C_{s}$ in relation to converter losses and the IGBT minimum on and minimum off time will be discussed. The values of $C_{s}$ and $L_{f}$ play a major role in the design of the entire converter.

### 4.2 Selection of the Snubber Capacitor and the Commutating Inductor

The selection of the snubber capacitor, $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ and the commutating inductor, $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$, are closely tied since both of them effect the operation of the converter when the IGBT turns off and on. When the IGBT turns off load current is diverted during its fall time $\left(t_{f}\right)$ to the snubber capacitor $C_{s}$. This is illustrated as ( $t_{1}$ to $t_{2}$ ) in Figures 4.2 and 4.3. The initial voltage across the IGBT, disregarding any diode forward recovery effects is zero and the rate of rise is controlled by the value of $\mathrm{C}_{\mathbf{s}}$. During the period $t_{2}$ to $t_{3}$ the voltage across $C_{s}$ rises linearly to $-E$. Once the capacitor voltage rises above -E the diode $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{f}}$ becomes forward biased and begins to pickup current. The current in the snubber capacitor reduces The interchange of current between $C_{s}$ and the freewheel diodes occurs during the period $t_{3}$ to $t_{4}$.


Figure 4.2 Snubber and Clamp Operational Sequence


Figure 4.3 Snubber and Clamp Waveforms

Finally the capacitor voltage reaches $-\left(2 \mathrm{E}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}\right)$ and the diode $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{c}}$ is forward biased so that the clamp voltage is applied across $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$. The current which was being carried by $D_{s}$ is entirely transferred to $D_{c}$. During the period $t_{4}$ to $t_{5}$ the current in the clamp is diverted to the freewheel diodes the rate being determined by $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}} / \mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$. The total time $t_{1}$ to $t_{5}$, called $t_{d}$, represents the complete commutation time.

There are several factors which effect the selection of the values of $L_{f}$ and $C_{s}$. These include the overall snubbing efficiency, the total commutation time and the rating of the recovery circuitry. The recovery circuitry in this case also includes the IGBT which must carry the resonant recovery current of $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{S}}$, increasing its peak current stress. This section discusses the selection of $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ an $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$ in relation to loss minimisation and the total commutation time limitations. First the the overall snubbing loss will be considered. Increasing the values of $L_{f}$ an $C_{s}$ will reduce the switching loss in the freewheel diodes and the IGBT but increases the power that must be recovered and returned to the power supply. This power is recovered at an efficiency of less than $100 \%$. The incremental reduction in switching loss reduces as the values of $C_{s}$ and $L_{f}$ increase. Therefore values of $C_{s}$ and $L_{f}$ can be selected that minimise the total loss.

In reference [15] a method was derived of selecting the values of $L_{f}$ and $C_{s}$ so that the overall power loss of the main switching device(IGBT) and the recovery system is a minimum. In this paper "Base snubber" values are found and all subsequent calculations are based on these. The term "Small Snubber" is applied to values below the base value and the term "Large Snubber" is applied to values above the base value. The base values are given by:

$$
\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{fbase}}=\frac{\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{b}} t_{\mathrm{f}}}{{ }^{2 \mathrm{I}} \mathrm{~L}}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{C}_{\text {sbase }}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}} t_{\mathrm{f}}}{2 \mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{b}}} \\
& \mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{b}}-\text { supply voltage (2E) }
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore using the values listed in section 4.1 and the nominal bus voltage and full load current:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{L}_{\text {fbase }}=\frac{560 \times 0.20}{2 \times 100}=0.56 \mu \mathrm{H} \\
& \mathrm{C}_{\text {sbase }}=\frac{100 \times 0.20}{2 \times 560}=0.018 \mu \mathrm{~F}
\end{aligned}
$$

Because the values chosen ( $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}=0.05 \mu \mathrm{~F}$ and $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}=2 \mu \mathrm{H}$ ) are greater than the base values, the snubbers are classified as large. This means that the snubber charging time is greater than the IGBT fall time. For a large snubber the optimum snubber size is given by:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{X}_{\text {opt }}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{3\left(1-\eta_{\mathrm{r}}\right)}} \\
& \mathrm{X}_{\mathrm{opt}}-\text { Optimum multiple of the base value } \\
& \eta_{\mathrm{r}} \text { - Recovery system efficiency }
\end{aligned}
$$

From section 4.3 the snubber recovery efficiency in this converter is approximately $85 \%$. Therefore $\mathrm{X}_{\text {opt }}$ will be:

$$
\mathrm{X}_{\mathrm{opt}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{3(1-0.85)}}=1.5
$$

This means that the optimum value for $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ will be $(1.5 \times 0.018)=0.027 \mu \mathrm{~F}$ and similarly for $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$ it will be $(1.5 \times 0.56)=0.84 \mu \mathrm{H}$. This analysis is true from a purely efficiency perspective. However there are other factors that need to be considered which make larger values for $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ and $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$ a better choice. This analysis limits itself to the IGBT alone. While it is true that the function of the snubber capacitor is to control the turn off losses of the IGBT it is not true that the only function of $L_{f}$ is to control the turn on losses. The peak reverse recovery current in the freewheel diodes and hence their switching loss is also dictated by the value of $L_{f}$. As will be seen in a later section it was necessary to make $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}=2 \mu \mathrm{H}$ to reduce this loss to an acceptable level.

An insufficiently large snubber capacitor causes excessive IGBT voltage overshoot. The overshoot being due to both parasitic inductance and the forward recovery of diode $D_{c}$. For this reason a value of $0.05 \mu \mathrm{~F}$ was found to be more suitable. Another important factor is that increasing the values of $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ and $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$ also extend the commutation time. It is desirable that for the major part of the operating load range that this time remains inside the minimum off time for the IGBT. If the IGBT switches on during the commutation period either the diode $D_{s}$ or $D_{c}$ will experience a reverse recovery $\mathrm{dI} / \mathrm{dt}$ only limited by the rise time of the IGBT. Since this is of the order of 150 nS this can be very severe and should be avoided where possible. As will subsequently be shown at the high end of the load range it is possible that the diode $D_{c}$ will experience this if the inductor $L_{f}$ is made too large or the minimum off time to small.

At the low end of the load range it will be the diode $D_{s}$ which experiences the reverse recovery. This of cause can not be avoided, but the load current at which it occurs can be made sufficiently low by not selecting $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ too large or the minimum off time too short. By doing this the losses can be kept to an acceptable level. At the selected frequency of 50 kHz the maximum value for $\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{mf}}$ and $\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{m} \mathrm{n}}$ that could be tolerated was $2.5 \mu \mathrm{~S}$. This restricts the output to $\pm 420 \mathrm{~V}$ at the nominal bus voltage.

Although this limitation to a certain extent has been overcome by the control strategy used, $2.5 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ still represents the maximum acceptable limit. Another parameter which has a bearing on the commutation time is the clamp voltage. The clamp voltage is proportional to the bus voltage. It is determined by the turns ratio of the SOI transformer. The maximum IGBT collector emitter voltage ( $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ce}}$ ) is determined by $\left(2 \mathrm{E}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}\right)$ which at the upper limit of input voltage, $(\mathrm{E}=336 \mathrm{~V})$ will be 828 V . In reality due to stray inductances and diode forward recovery effects this could be exceeded by up to 150 V , under worst case conditions and therefore voltages approaching 1 kV could be expected. This was considered to be the maximum voltage stress that could be tolerated for a 1200 V device. In order to assess the selection of $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{S}}$ and $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$ in terms of the commutation time an expression for $t_{d}$ will now be derived one stage at a time.

## $\mathrm{t}_{1} \leq \mathrm{t} \leq \mathrm{t}_{2}$

During the period $t_{1}$ to $t_{2}$ the IGBT current is assumed to fall linearly from $I_{L}$ to zero over $t_{f}$ and hence the snubber capacitor current rises linearly over the same period. The capacitor voltage which is initially reset to +E will decrease with a quadratic function. This relationship from equation $3.7-6$ is:

$$
\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{c}_{\mathrm{s}}}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{E}-\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}\left(\mathrm{t}-\mathrm{t}_{1}\right)^{2}}{2 t_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}
$$

At time $t_{2}$, i.e. $\left(\mathrm{t}-\mathrm{t}_{1}\right)=t_{\mathrm{f}}$ :

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{c}_{\mathrm{s}}}\left(t_{\mathrm{f}}\right)=\mathrm{E}-\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}} t_{\mathrm{f}}^{2}}{2 t_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}=\mathrm{E}-\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}} t_{\mathrm{f}}}{2 \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}} \\
& \mathrm{t}_{2}-\mathrm{t}_{1}=t_{\mathrm{f}}
\end{align*}
$$

## $\mathrm{t}_{2} \leq \mathrm{t} \leq \mathrm{t}_{\mathbf{3}}$

During the period $t_{2}$ to $t_{3}$ the capacitor current is constant and equal to $I_{L}$, the voltage decays linearly from an initial voltage determined by equation 4.2-4.

Therefore:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{c}_{\mathrm{s}}}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{E}-\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}} t_{\mathrm{f}}}{2 \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}-\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}\left(\mathrm{t}-\mathrm{t}_{2}\right) \\
& \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{c}_{\mathrm{s}}}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{E}-\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}\left[\frac{\tau_{\mathrm{f}}}{2}\left(\mathrm{t}-\mathrm{t}_{2}\right)\right]
\end{align*}
$$

At $t_{3}$ the capacitor voltage will have reached - E and therefore:

$$
\begin{align*}
& -\mathrm{E}=\mathrm{E}-\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}\left[\frac{t_{\mathrm{f}}}{2}+\left(\mathrm{t}_{3}-\mathrm{t}_{2}\right)\right] \\
& \left(\mathrm{t}_{3}-\mathrm{t}_{2}\right)=\frac{2 \mathrm{E} \mathrm{C}}{\mathrm{~s}} \\
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}
\end{align*}-\frac{t_{\mathrm{f}}}{2} \quad l
$$

$t_{3} \leq t \leq t_{4}$
During the period $t_{3}$ to $t_{4}$ the capacitor $C_{s}$ and the Inductor $L_{f}$ form a parallel $L-C$ circuit which has a total current of $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}$ flowing in it. The voltage across the capacitor can be shown to be:

$$
\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{c}_{\mathrm{s}}}(\mathrm{t})=-\left[\mathrm{E}+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}} \mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{s}} \operatorname{Sin}\left(\omega_{\mathrm{s}}\left(\mathrm{t}-\mathrm{t}_{3}\right)\right]\right.
$$

Where: $\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{s}}=\sqrt{\frac{\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}}{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{s}}=6.32 \Omega \text { (Using as built values) } \\
& \omega_{\mathrm{s}}=\sqrt{\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}} \\
& \omega_{\mathrm{s}}=3.16 \mathrm{Mr} / \mathrm{s} \text { (Using as built values) }
\end{aligned}
$$

The magnitude of the current in $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ will be reducing and will be given by:

$$
\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{c}_{\mathrm{s}}}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}} \operatorname{Cos}\left(\omega_{\mathrm{s}}\left(\mathrm{t}-\mathrm{t}_{3}\right)\right)
$$

The magnitude of the current in $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$ will therefore be:

$$
{ }^{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}\left[1-\operatorname{Cos}\left(\omega_{\mathrm{s}}\left(\mathrm{t}-\mathrm{t}_{3}\right)\right]\right.
$$

The time $t_{4}$ is governed by when the capacitor voltage reaches $-\left(E+V_{c}\right)$ :

$$
\begin{align*}
& -\left(\mathrm{E}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}\right)=-\left[\mathrm{E}+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}} \mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{S}} \operatorname{Sin}\left(\omega_{\mathrm{s}}\left(\mathrm{t}_{4}-\mathrm{t}_{3}\right)\right]\right. \\
& \left(\mathrm{t}_{4}-\mathrm{t}_{3}\right)=\frac{1}{\omega_{\mathrm{s}}} \operatorname{Sin}^{-1}\left[\frac{\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{c}}}{\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}\right]
\end{align*}
$$

If $\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}<\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}$ the capacitor voltage fails to reach $-\left(\mathrm{E}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}\right)$ and therefore the current is diverted to $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$ without a clamping period.

The current which has been diverted to $L_{f}$ will be given by:

$$
\begin{align*}
& { }^{\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{f}}}\left(\mathrm{t}_{4}\right)=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}\left[1-{\operatorname{Cos} \operatorname{Sin}^{-1}\left[\frac{\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{C}}}{\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{S}} \mathrm{~L}}\right]}^{L}\right] \\
& \mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}}\left(\mathrm{t}_{4}\right)=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}\left[1-\sqrt{1-\left[\frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}}{\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}\right]^{2}}\right]
\end{align*}
$$

And therefore:

$$
\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{c}_{\mathrm{s}}}\left(\mathrm{t}_{4}\right)=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}} \sqrt{1-\left[\frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}}{\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{I} \mathrm{~L}}\right]^{2}}
$$

And since the current in the snubber capacitor is transferred to the clamp just after $t_{4}$ :

$$
{ }^{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{c}}\left(\mathrm{t}_{4}\right)=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}} \sqrt{1-\left[\frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}}{\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}\right]^{2}}
$$

## $t_{4} \leq t \leq t_{5}$

During the period $t_{4}$ to $t_{5}$ current is diverted from the clamp to the freewheel diodes and hence $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$. The initial current in $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{c}}$ is given by equation 4.2-14 and during $t_{4}$ it is reduced linearly to zero at a rate determined by the clamp voltage $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}$ :

$$
\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{c}}}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}\left[\sqrt{1-\left[\frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}}{\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{I} \mathrm{~L}}\right]^{2}}\right]-\frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}}{\mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}}}\left(\mathrm{t}-\mathrm{t}_{4}\right)
$$

The time $\left(t_{5}-t_{4}\right)$ will be given by $I_{L_{f}}(t)=0$ :

$$
\begin{align*}
& 0=I_{L}\left[\sqrt{1-\left[\frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}}{\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}\right]^{2}}\right]-\frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}}{\mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}}}\left(\mathrm{t}_{5}-\mathrm{t}_{4}\right) \\
& \mathrm{t}_{5}-\mathrm{t}_{4}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}} \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}}}{\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{c}}}\left[\sqrt{1-\left[\frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}}{\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}\right]^{2}}\right]
\end{align*}
$$

From equations $4.2-5,4.2-7,4.2-11$ and $4.2-16$ the total diversion time $t_{d}$ will be given by:

$$
\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{d}}=\frac{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{f}}}{2}+\frac{2 \mathrm{E} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}+\frac{1}{\omega_{\mathrm{s}}} \operatorname{Sin}^{-1}\left[\frac{\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{c}}}{\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}\right]+\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}} \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}}}{\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{c}}} \sqrt{1-\left[\frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}}{\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}\right]^{2}}
$$

This relationship can be used to determine the suitability of the selected values for $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ and $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$.

A plot of total diversion time against load current with $C_{s}$ as a variable parameter $(0.03 \mu \mathrm{~F}, 0.05 \mu \mathrm{~F}$ and $0.07 \mu \mathrm{~F}$ are used $)$ is displayed in Figure 4.4. A horizontal line indicates the minimum off time for the IGBT of $2.5 \mu \mathrm{~S}$. At high load currents the capacitor value has little effect on the total diversion time since $t_{4}-t_{1}$ is small compared with $\mathrm{t}_{5}-\mathrm{t}_{4}$. Its main effect is at low currents where the load at which the minimum off time constraint is violated is effected by the value of $\mathrm{C}_{5}$. Also below a load current of $V_{c} / Z_{s}$ the capacitor voltage fails to reach $-\left(\mathrm{E}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}\right)$ and the current is diverted into the freewheel diodes without a clamping period and so $\mathrm{t}_{5}-\mathrm{t}_{4}=0$ and $t_{4}-t_{3}=\pi /(2 \times \omega)$. In fact it can be shown for the capacitor values considered and $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}=2 \mu \mathrm{H}$ that there is no clamping period for load currents that correspond to $\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{d}} \geq$ $\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{mf}}=2.5 \mu \mathrm{~S}$. This means that only the snubber diodes will be involved in a high reverse recovery.


Figure 4.4 Effect of Cs on the Total IGBT to Df Diversion Time

The worst case occurs when diode $D_{s}$ is carrying the total load current at $t_{3}$. This means that:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& t_{3}-t_{1}=t_{\mathrm{mf}} \\
& \frac{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{f}}}{2}+\frac{2 \mathrm{E} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}=\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{mf}}
\end{aligned}
$$

The diode $D_{s}$ carries the full load current at this time so:

$$
\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{c}_{\mathrm{s}}}\left(\mathrm{t}_{3}\right)=\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{L}}\left(\mathrm{t}_{3}\right)=\frac{2 \mathrm{E} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}{\left[\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{m} \mathrm{f}}-\frac{t_{\mathrm{f}}}{2}\right]}
$$

The $\mathrm{dI} / \mathrm{dt}$ is determined by the IGBT rise time as follows:

$$
\frac{\mathrm{dI}}{\mathrm{dt}}=\mathrm{m}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}{t_{\mathrm{r}}}
$$

From Chapter Three an approximate expression relating $I_{r m}$ to $m$ and $I_{f}$ for the DSE60-10A diodes was derived:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}} \approx \mathrm{~m}^{0.265} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}^{0.735}-\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}} @ \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j}}=125^{\circ} \mathrm{C}
$$

Therefore from equation 4.2-16:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}} \approx \frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}{ }^{0.265} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}{ }^{0.735}}{t_{\mathrm{r}}^{0.265}}-\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}
$$

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}} \approx \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}\left[\frac{1}{t_{\mathrm{r}}^{0.265}}-1\right]
$$

From Chapter Three the reverse recovery loss assuming instantaneous rise in reverse voltage:

$$
P_{s}=f_{s} V_{r m} Q_{2}
$$

Where:

$$
\mathrm{Q}_{2}=\mathrm{Q}_{1}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}^{2}}{2 \mathrm{~m}}
$$

Therefore:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s}}=\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{rm}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}^{2}\left[\frac{1}{t_{\mathrm{r}}^{0.265}}-1\right]^{2} \frac{t_{\mathrm{r}}}{2 \mathrm{I}} \mathrm{~L} \\
& \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s}}=\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{rm}} \frac{t_{\mathrm{r}}}{2}\left[\frac{1}{t_{\mathrm{r}}^{0.265}}-1\right]^{2} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}
\end{align*}
$$

The reverse maximum voltage is guaranteed to be clamped to 450 V by an active snubbing circuit as shown in Figure 4.7. Using the data from section 4.1 and substituting from equation $4.2-18$ into $4.2-20$ :

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s}}=0.72 \frac{2 \mathrm{E} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}{\left[\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{mf}}-\frac{t_{\mathrm{f}}}{2}\right]} \\
& \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s}}=0.6 \mathrm{E} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}} \\
& \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}-(\mu \mathrm{F})
\end{aligned}
$$

At the maximum bus voltage $(\mathrm{E}=336 \mathrm{~V})$ :

$$
\begin{array}{lr}
\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s}} \approx 200 \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}} & 4.2-21 \\
\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}-(\mu \mathrm{F}) &
\end{array}
$$

The conduction loss would be given by:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P_{c}=I_{L} t_{m f} f_{s} V_{f} \\
& V_{f} \text { - Diode average forward voltage }
\end{aligned}
$$

This neglects that the average current carried by $D_{s}$ during the period $t_{1}$ to $t_{2}$ is less than $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}$ and therefore overestimates the loss. Substituting equation 4.2-15:

$$
P_{c}=\frac{2 E C_{s}}{\left[t_{\mathrm{mf}}-\frac{t_{f}}{2}\right]} \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{mf}} \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{f}}
$$

The average forward voltage is $1.8 \mathrm{~V} @ \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j}}=125^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. Substituting the values from section 4.1 into $4.2-22$ yields:

$$
\begin{align*}
& P_{c}=55 C_{s} \\
& C_{s}-(\mu \mathrm{F})
\end{align*}
$$

The total loss from equations $4.2-18$ and $4.2-20$ will therefore be:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{t}}=255 \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}} \\
& \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}-(\mu \mathrm{F})
\end{align*}
$$

The diode $D_{s}$ consists of two series DSE60-10A diodes each insulated from the heatsink by silicon pads, therefore:

$$
\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j}}=\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{t}}\left[\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{th}_{\mathrm{j}-\mathrm{c}}}+\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{th}_{\mathrm{c}-\mathrm{h}}}\right]+\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{h}}
$$

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j}}=\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{t}}[0.75+0.75]+80 \\
& \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j}}=255 \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}[0.75+0.75]+80 \\
& \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j}}=383 \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}+80 \\
& \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}-(\mu \mathrm{F})
\end{align*}
$$

The diode $D_{s}$ junction temperature for the three values of snubber capacitance is presented in Table 4.1.

| $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}(\mu \mathrm{F})$ | $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j}}\left({ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right)$ |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |
| 0.03 | 92 |
| 0.05 | 99 |
| 0.07 | 107 |

Table 4.1 Diode $D_{s}$ worst case junction temperature for Cs equal to $\mathbf{0 . 0 3 , 0 . 0 5}$ and $0.07 \mu \mathrm{~F}$

The choice of $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ as $0.05 \mu \mathrm{~F}$ is quite a safe selection for this operating condition, actually a higher value of $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ could be used which would further reduce the switching loss for the IGBT. However, as previously mentioned the value of $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ effects the operation of the resonant reversal circuit and it can be shown that the value of $0.05 \mu \mathrm{~F}$ on balance is a good selection. This will be explored in more detail in the next section.

The effect of changing the value of $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$ on the total diversion time is shown in Figure 4.5. The value of $L_{f}$ mainly effects the commutation time near the top of the load range and is most likely to cause a problem at the maximum current. At low load currents its effect is minor. It can be seen that the choice of $L_{f}=2 \mu \mathrm{H}$ is appropriate since it allows the load current to surge to around 130 A at the nominal bus voltage before there is a minimum off time violation.


Figure 4.5 Effect of Lf on the Total IGBT to Df Diversion Time

Such an event will cause a very high reverse recovery current in the clamp diodes $D_{c}$. This case is substantially more severe then the last case since the diode could be carrying a large percentage of the full load current if $L_{f}$ is selected too large. The philosophy in this instance was to select $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$ such that in the worst case under continuous operating conditions the minimum off time would not be violated.

Figure 4.6 shows the diversion time as a function of load current for the "as built" values with the bus voltage as a parameter. At full load and minimum bus voltage the diversion time is longest but has sufficient margin from the $2.5 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ limit if $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$ is selected to be $2 \mu \mathrm{H}$. However making $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$ any larger would be unacceptable. Under surge conditions the limit will be violated. It is necessary to check that under surge conditions that the switching loss is not high. The requirement is that at the maximum surge current of 150 A the junction temperature should not exceed $125^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. The losses in diode $D_{c}$ under surge conditions will now be checked. Since $I_{L}$ is much greater than $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}} / \mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{s}}$ the diversion time is closely approximated to :

$$
\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{d}}=\frac{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{f}}}{2}+\frac{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}\left[2 \mathrm{E}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}\right]+\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}} \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}}}{\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{c}}}
$$

And the initial current in $D_{c}$ can be approximated to $I_{L}$. The current being carried by $D_{c}$ during time $t_{4}$ will be given by:

$$
{ }^{i_{D}}{ }_{c}(t)=I_{L}-\frac{V_{c}}{L_{f}} t
$$

Therefore at time $t_{m f}$ the current in $D_{c}$ will be given by:

$$
\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{c}}}\left(\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{mf}}\right)=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}-\frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}}{\mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}}}\left\{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{mf}}-\left[\frac{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{f}}}{2}+\frac{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}\left(2 \mathrm{E}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}\right)\right]\right\}
$$



Figure 4.6 Effect of the Bus Voltage on the Total IGBT to Df Diversion TIme

The rate of decay of the forward current in $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{c}}$ once the IGBT turns on will as before be:

$$
\frac{\mathrm{di}(\mathrm{t})}{\mathrm{dt}}=\mathrm{m}=\frac{\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{c}}}\left(\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{mf}}\right)}{t_{\mathrm{r}}}
$$

In this case because the calculation is more critical the exact value for $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}$ will be calculated using table 3.1. the worst case conditions will be assumed:

$$
\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}=104 \mathrm{~V} \text { (i.e. minimum bus voltage) }
$$

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}=150 \mathrm{~A}(\text { surge current })
$$

Also $D_{c}$ is constructed from two parallel diodes. Therefore:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& { }^{\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{c}}}\left(\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{mf}}\right)=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}-\frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}}{\mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}}}\left\{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{mf}}-\left[\frac{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{f}}}{2}+\frac{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}\left(2 \mathrm{E}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}\right)\right]\right\} \\
& { }^{\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{c}}}}=150-\frac{104}{2} \times[2.5-(0.1+0.184)] \\
& \quad=34.8 \mathrm{~A}(17.4 \mathrm{~A} \text { per diode }) \\
& \mathrm{m}=\frac{\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{D}}\left(\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{c}} \mathrm{f}\right)}{t_{\mathrm{r}}} \\
& =\frac{34.8}{0.15}=232.0 \mathrm{~A} / \mu \mathrm{S}(116.0 \mathrm{~A} / \mu \mathrm{S} \text { per diode }) \\
& \mathrm{T}_{0}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}}{\mathrm{~m}}=\frac{34.8}{232.0}=0.15 \mu \mathrm{~S}
\end{aligned}
$$

From Chapter Three:

$$
\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{t}}(\text { diode transit time })=0.13 \mu \mathrm{~S} @ \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j}}=125^{\circ} \mathrm{C}
$$

Therefore:

$$
\frac{\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{o}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}}=\frac{0.15}{0.13}=1.15
$$

From table 3.1:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}}=1.85 \\
& \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{x}}=1.85 \times \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{t}}=1.85 \times 0.13=0.24 \mu \mathrm{~S} \\
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}=\mathrm{m} \mathrm{~T} \\
& \mathrm{x}
\end{aligned}-\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}=116.0 \times 0.24-17.4=10.4 \mathrm{~A} \text { per diode } \mathrm{l}
$$

The switching loss will be given as before by:

$$
\begin{aligned}
P_{s} & =f_{\mathrm{s}} V_{\mathrm{rm}} \frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}{ }^{2}}{2 \mathrm{~m}} \\
& =0.05 \times 450 \times \frac{10.4^{2}}{2 \times 116}=10.5 \text { watts }
\end{aligned}
$$

The conduction loss will be determined by the average current flowing in $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{c}}$ during the IGBT off time and the average forward drop in the diodes.

An average forward drop of $1.8 \mathrm{~V} @ T_{\mathrm{j}}=125^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ will be assumed:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{c}}=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{avg}} \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{mf}} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}} \\
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{avg}}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{c}}}\left(\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{mf}}\right)}{4} \\
& \\
& =\frac{150+34.8}{4}=46.2 \mathrm{~A} \text { per diode } \\
& \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{c}}
\end{aligned}
$$

The total loss will therefore be:

$$
P_{t}=10.5+10.4=20.9 \text { watts }
$$

The diodes are again isolated from the heatsink by silicone pads, so therefore:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j}} & =\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{t}}\left[\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{th}_{\mathrm{j}-\mathrm{c}}}+\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{th}_{\mathrm{c}-\mathrm{h}}}\right]+80 \\
& =20.9 \times[0.75+0.75]+80=111^{\circ} \mathrm{C}
\end{aligned}
$$

This is satisfactory, however it should be pointed out that had only a single set of series diodes been used the junction temperature would have been around $135^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ which was considered not to be sufficient margin.

The analysis above shows in so far as the minimum off time constraint and the IGBT snubbing efficiency is concerned the selection of $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ and $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$ are appropriate. However further discussion of the selection of these in reference to other relevant aspects of the converter will be made in subsequent sections.

### 4.3 Snubber Module Design

In this section the design of the snubber module including $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{s} 1} / \mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{s} 2}, \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}, \mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{r}}$ and $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{r}}$ will be examined based on the selection of $0.05 \mu \mathrm{~F}$ for the value of $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$. Shown in Figure 4.7 is a schematic diagram of the snubber module. First the design of the resonant resetting system will be discussed. The voltage across $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ must be reset from $-\left(\mathrm{E}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}\right)$ to +E within the IGBT minimum on time. If this does not occur the IGBT will be subjected to a step voltage at turn off resulting in increased switching losses. The resonant reversal process is illustrated in Figure 4.8 with waveforms being shown in Figure 4.9. During period $t_{1}$ to $t_{2}$ the inductor $L_{r}$ and capacitor $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ form a series resonant circuit with an initial capacitor voltage of $-(\mathrm{E}$ $+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}$ ). This will resonantly reverse to +E at which time there will be a current $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{a}}$ flowing in $L_{r}$. The energy stored in $L_{r}$ associated with $I_{a}, E_{a}$ is equal to the additional energy stored in the $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ during the IGBT turn off.

That is:

$$
\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{a}}=\frac{1}{2} \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{r}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{a}}^{2}=\frac{1}{2} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}\left[\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{c}}+\mathrm{E}\right]^{2}-\frac{1}{2} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{E}^{2}
$$

After $t_{2}$ the diode $D_{s}$ is forward biased and the inductor current decreases linearly to zero at a rate determined by $E / L_{r}$, this occurs during the period $t_{2}$ to $t_{3}$. The energy $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{a}}$ is returned to the supply. Disregarding the small device losses, the snubber is lossless.

In the following analysis the time period $t_{1}$ to $t_{2}$ will be denoted $t_{r}$, the period $t_{2}$ to $t_{3}$ will be denoted $t_{L}$ and the period $t_{1}$ to $t_{3}$ will be denoted $t_{w}$. The total time $t_{w}$ must be less than the IGBT minimum on time. During the interval $t_{1}$ to $t_{2}$ the inductor current is given by:

$$
i_{L_{\mathrm{r}}}(\mathrm{t})=\frac{\mathrm{E}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}}{\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{r}}} \operatorname{Sin}\left(\omega_{\mathrm{r}} \mathrm{t}\right)
$$



Figure 4.7 Snubber Module Schematic

$$
\mathrm{t}_{1}<\mathrm{t}<\mathrm{t}_{2}
$$


$\mathrm{t}_{2}<\mathrm{t}<\mathrm{t}_{3}$


Figure 4.8 Snubber Resonant Reversal Operation


Figure 4.9 Snubber Resonant Reversal Waveforms

For $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{r}}=8 \mu \mathrm{H}$ and $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}=0.05 \mu \mathrm{~F}$ :

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{r}}=\sqrt{\frac{\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{r}}}{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}}=\sqrt{\frac{8}{0.05}}=12.65 \Omega \\
& \omega_{\mathrm{r}}=\sqrt{\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{r}} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}=\sqrt{8 \times 0.05}=1.58 \mathrm{Mrad} / \mathrm{s}
\end{aligned}
$$

The peak current carried by the diode $D_{r}$ at the highest bus voltage is:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{p}}=\frac{\mathrm{E}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}}{\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{r}}}=\frac{336+156}{12.65}=38.9 \mathrm{~A}
$$

At this time it is worth making the point that $I_{p}$ and the maximum reverse recovery current in $D_{f}$ occur almost simultaneously This means the IGBT will have to carry a maximum current of $I_{L}+I_{r m}+I_{p}$ which will exceed 200 A under surge conditions. This has a bearing on the choice of $L_{r}$ and even $C_{s}$ since these values effect the peak current. In this respect the values chosen yielded satisfactory results. The values chosen yield satisfactory results.

The capacitor voltage will be given by:

$$
\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}(\mathrm{t})=-\left(\mathrm{E}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}\right) \operatorname{Cos}\left(\omega_{\mathrm{r}} \mathrm{t}\right)
$$

The time $t_{r}$ can be found from equation 4.3-3:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{E}=-\left(\mathrm{E}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}\right) \operatorname{Cos}\left(\omega_{\mathrm{r}} \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{r}}\right) \\
& \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{r}}=\frac{1}{\omega_{\mathrm{r}}} \operatorname{Cos}^{-1}\left[\frac{-\mathrm{E}}{\mathrm{E}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}}\right]
\end{align*}
$$

The current $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{a}}$ being carried by $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{r}}$ at $\mathrm{t}_{2}$ from Equations $4.3-2$ and $4.3-4$ will be given by:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& i_{L_{r}}\left(t_{2}\right)=I_{a}=\frac{E+V_{c}}{Z_{r}} \operatorname{Sin}\left\{\operatorname{Cos}^{-1}\left[\frac{-E}{E+V_{c}}\right]\right\} \\
& I_{a}=\frac{E+V_{c}}{Z_{r}} \frac{\sqrt{V_{c}\left(E+V_{c}\right)}}{E+V_{c}} \\
& I_{a}=\frac{\sqrt{V_{c}\left(E+V_{c}\right)}}{Z_{r}} \\
& I_{a}=\frac{\sqrt{156(336+156)}}{12.65}=21.9 \mathrm{~A}
\end{aligned}
$$

The time period $t_{2}$ to $t_{3}$ during which the inductor current decays linearly to zero and energy is returned to the supply will be given by:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{L}}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{a}} \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{r}}}{\mathrm{E}}=\frac{\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{r}}}{\mathrm{E}} \frac{\sqrt{\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{c}}\left(\mathrm{E}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}\right)}}{\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{r}}} \\
& \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{L}}=\frac{\sqrt{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}\left(\mathrm{E}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}\right)}}{\omega_{\mathrm{r}} \mathrm{E}}
\end{align*}
$$

A major requirement is that $\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{w}}$ be less than $2.5 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ under worst case conditions.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{w}}=\frac{1}{\omega_{\mathrm{r}}} \operatorname{Cos}^{-1}\left[\frac{-\mathrm{E}}{\mathrm{E}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}}\right]+\frac{\sqrt{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}\left(\mathrm{E}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}\right)}}{\omega_{\mathrm{r}} \mathrm{E}} \\
& \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{w}}=\frac{1}{1.58} \times \operatorname{Cos}^{-1}\left[\frac{-336}{336+156}\right]+\frac{\sqrt{156(336+156)}}{1.58 \times 336}=2 \mu \mathrm{~S}
\end{aligned}
$$

This gives adequate margin from the minimum IGBT on time of $2.5 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ to allow for component variations. The reverșe recovery loss in diode $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{r}}$ can now be evaluated. Diode $D_{s}$ is in series with $D_{r}$ during this period, reverse current will be established in both diodes after $t_{3}$, however $D_{s}$ recovers into zero volts and therefore experiences no loss whereas $D_{r}$ recovers into $E$ regardless of whether $D_{s}$ recovers first or not. Therefore the switching losses in $D_{r}$ are not effected by the behavior of $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{s}}$.

Because the current wave shape is sinusoidal for the purposes of the reverse recovery calculation the forward current will be taken to be the average for the period $t_{1}$ to $t_{2}$ and the $\mathrm{dI} / \mathrm{dt}$ to be the slope of the linear portion of the current decay.

The average current is calculated as follows:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& i_{L_{r}}(t)=\frac{E+V_{c}}{Z_{r}} \operatorname{Sin}\left(\omega_{r} t\right) \\
& I_{a v g}=\frac{1}{t_{r}} \frac{E+V_{c}}{Z_{r}} \int_{0}^{t_{r}} \operatorname{Sin}\left(\omega_{r} t\right) d t \\
& I_{a v g}=\frac{1}{t_{r}} \frac{2 E+V_{c}}{Z_{r} \omega_{r}} \\
& I_{f}=I_{a v g}=\frac{1}{1.47} \times \frac{672+156}{12.65 \times 1.58}=28.2 \mathrm{~A}
\end{aligned}
$$

The $\mathrm{dI} / \mathrm{dt}$ is given by:

$$
\frac{\mathrm{dI}}{\mathrm{dt}}=\mathrm{m}=\frac{\mathrm{E}}{\mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{r}}}=\frac{336}{8.0}=42.0 \mathrm{~A} / \mu \mathrm{S}
$$

Using the methods outlined in Chapter 3:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{t}}(\text { DSEI } 60-10 \mathrm{~A})=0.13 \mu \mathrm{~S} @ \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j}}=125^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \\
& \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{o}}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}}{\mathrm{~m}}=\frac{28.2}{42.0}=0.67 \mu \mathrm{~S} \\
& \frac{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{o}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}}=\frac{0.67}{0.13}=5.15
\end{aligned}
$$

From Table 3.1

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}=5.9 \\
& \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}} \\
& \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{x}}=\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{t}} \times 5.9=0.13 \times 5.9=0.77 \mu \mathrm{~S} \\
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}=\mathrm{m} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{x}}-\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}=42 \times 0.77-28.2=4.1 \mathrm{~A}
\end{aligned}
$$

The maximum reverse voltage for $D_{r}$ is $E$ so the switching losses assuming instantaneous rise of the reverse voltage would be given by:

$$
P_{s}=f_{s} V_{r m} \frac{I_{r}^{2}}{2}=0.05 \times 336 \times \frac{4.1^{2}}{2 \times 42}=3.4 \mathrm{watts}
$$

The conduction losses for $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{r}}$ will now be calculated, also assuming a junction temperature of $125^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. The average current during $\mathrm{t}_{1}$ to $\mathrm{t}_{2}$ has already been calculated, the RMS current will be found as follows:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rms}}=\sqrt{\frac{1}{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{r}}} \int_{0}^{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{r}}}\left[\frac{\mathrm{E}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}}{\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{r}}} \operatorname{Sin}\left(\omega_{\mathrm{r}} \mathrm{t}\right)\right]^{2} \mathrm{dt}}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rms}} & =\frac{\mathrm{E}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}}{\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{r}}} \sqrt{\left[\frac{1}{2}-\frac{\operatorname{Sin}\left(2 \omega t_{\mathrm{r}}\right)}{2 \omega_{\mathrm{r}} t_{\mathrm{r}}}\right]} \\
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rms}} & =\frac{336+156}{12.65} \sqrt{\left[\frac{1}{2}-\frac{\operatorname{Sin}(2 \times 1.58 \times 1.47)}{2 \times 1.58 \times 1.47}\right]} \\
& =32.9 \mathrm{~A}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
4.3-9
$$

The conduction loss associated with $t_{r}$ is therefore:

$$
\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{c}}\left(\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{r}}\right)=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{to}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{avg}} \frac{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{r}}}{\mathrm{~T}}+\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rms}}^{2} \frac{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{r}}}{\mathrm{~T}}
$$

From Chapter Three the diode forward voltage and resistance will be given by:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{t} 0}=-3 \times 10^{-3} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j}}+1.85 \mathrm{~V}=1.48 \mathrm{~V} @ \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j}}=125^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \\
& \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}=6 \times 10^{-3} \Omega
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{c}}\left(\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{r}}\right) & =1.48 \times 28.2 \times \frac{1.47}{20}+6 \times 10^{-3} \times 32.9^{2} \times \frac{1.47}{20} \\
& =3.5 \text { watts }
\end{aligned}
$$

The conduction losses during period $t_{L}$ will be given by:

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{c}}\left(\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{L}}\right) & =\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{to}} \frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{a}}}{2} \frac{{ }^{\mathrm{t}}{ }_{\mathrm{L}}}{\mathrm{~T}}+\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}} \frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{a}}{ }^{2}}{3} \frac{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{L}}}{\mathrm{~T}} \\
\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{c}}\left(\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{L}}\right) & =1.48 \times \frac{21.9}{2} \times \frac{0.52}{20}+6 \times 10^{-3} \times \frac{21.9^{2}}{3} \times \frac{0.52}{20} \\
& =0.45 \text { watts }
\end{align*}
$$

The total loss in diode $D_{r}$ will be:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{t}}=\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s}}+\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{c}}\left(\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{r}}\right)+\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{c}}\left(\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{L}}\right) \\
& \quad=3.4+3.5+0.45=7.4 \text { watts }
\end{aligned}
$$

The diode is isolated from the heatsink by a silicon pad so the junction temperature will be given by:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j}} & =\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{t}}\left(\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{th}}(\mathrm{j}-\mathrm{c})+\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{th}}(\mathrm{c}-\mathrm{h})+\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{h}}\right. \\
& =7.8(0.75+0.75)+80^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \\
& =91.0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}
\end{aligned}
$$

Since this is much lower than the assumed junction temperature the conduction losses would be higher but the switching losses would be lower, the result being that the actual figure would still be close to $91^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. As long as $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j}}$ is less than $125^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ under worst case conditions the design is considered to be safe.

The losses in diode $D_{s}$ can now be calculated. The diode $D_{s}$ only has significant switching loss when the minimum off time limit is violated which occurs at load currents of less than 15 A as discussed in Section 4.2. Above 15A the losses in $\mathrm{D}_{s}$ are dominated by conduction losses. Losses due to the forward recovery will be neglected since they are thought to be less than 1 watt at full load. During the period $t_{1}$ to $t_{2}$ of Figure 4.3 the current in $D_{s}$ rises linearly to the full load current over $t_{\mathrm{f}}$. The loss associated with this will be given by:

$$
\mathrm{P}_{1}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{to}} \frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}{2} \frac{t_{\mathrm{f}}}{\mathrm{~T}}+\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}} \frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}^{2}}{3} \frac{t_{\mathrm{f}}}{\mathrm{~T}}
$$

From Chapter Three the DSEI60-10A forward characteristics are as follows:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{to}}=-3 \times 10^{-3} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j}}+1.85 \mathrm{~V}=1.48 \mathrm{~V} @ \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j}}=125^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \\
& \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}=6 \times 10^{-3} \Omega
\end{aligned}
$$

During the period $t_{2}$ to $t_{3}$ of Figure 4.3 the current in $D_{s}$ is constant and equal to the load current. Therefore:

$$
P_{2}=V_{t o} I_{L} \frac{t_{L}}{T}+R_{f} I_{L}^{2} \frac{t_{L}}{T}
$$

The time required can be found using equation $4.2-7$ will be:

$$
\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{L}}=\frac{2 \mathrm{E} \mathrm{C}}{\mathrm{~s}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}-\frac{t_{\mathrm{f}}}{2}
$$

Therefore:

$$
\mathrm{P}_{2}=\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}\left[\frac{2 \mathrm{E} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}-\frac{t_{\mathrm{f}}}{2}\right]\left[\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{to}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}+\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}^{2}\right]
$$

The diode $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{s}}$ also carries current during the resonant resetting period as indicated previously. The conduction loss associated with this as it was for $D_{r}$ will be:

$$
\mathrm{P}_{3}=\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{c}}\left(\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{L}}\right)=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{to}} \frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{a}}}{2} \frac{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{L}}}{2}+\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}} \frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{a}}^{2}}{3} \frac{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{L}}}{\mathrm{~T}}
$$

$$
\mathrm{P}_{3}=0.87 \text { watts }
$$

This is independent of the load current. The total conduction loss can be shown to be:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P_{t}=P_{1}+P_{2}+P_{3} \\
& P_{t}=f_{S}\left[2 \mathrm{EC}_{s} V_{t o}+2 \mathrm{EC}_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}+\frac{-t_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}}{6} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}^{2}\right]+\mathrm{P}_{3} \\
& \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{t}}=0.05 \times\left[49.7+0.2 \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}-2 \times 10^{-4} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}^{2}\right]+\mathrm{P}_{3}
\end{aligned}
$$

The square term is small compared with the others. The conduction losses increase weakly with load and have a large constant component. The total loss at full load will be:

$$
P_{t}=0.05 \times\left[49.7+0.2 \times 100-2 \mathrm{e}-4 \times 100^{2}\right]+0.87=4.3 \text { watts }
$$

It can be seen that full load is not the worst case operating condition for diode $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{s}}$. In Section 4.3 it was found at low load currents the switching loss becomes substantially greater than the value above.

While the value of $C_{s}$ has been established the exact specification of $C_{s}$ needs to be carefully examined. The losses in $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ can be dangerously high if it is not selected correctly. In fact no single capacitor had the capability required, and multiple capacitors were used. Dielectric losses cause capacitor self heating which, if not allowed for will cause a thermal runaway effect and failure to occur. Manufacturers usually state the losses for sinusoidal excitation as Tan $\delta$ which is the ratio of active to reactive power:

$$
\mathrm{P}=\mathrm{Q} \operatorname{Tan} \delta
$$

A low loss capacitor therefore has a low $\operatorname{Tan} \delta$, polypropylene capacitors for example have values below $1 \times 10^{-3}$ as compared to electrolytic capacitors which may approach 0.1 . The Tan $\delta$ is known to increase with operating frequency, the relationship normally being assumed to be linear:
$\operatorname{Tan} \delta=\operatorname{Tan} \delta_{0}+\mathrm{kf}$
$\operatorname{Tan} \delta_{0}$ - low frequency value of $\operatorname{Tan} \delta$
k - proportionality constant

In this application the excitation is squarewave rather than sinewave so more than a single frequency is involved. In order to calculate the exact dielectric losses for squarewave excitation it is necessary to calculate the the losses for each harmonic and form an addition. An approximate solution for the dielectric power loss for squarewave excitation is , [34].:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{P}=\frac{\pi}{4} \mathrm{C} \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}(\Delta \mathrm{~V})^{2} \operatorname{Tan} \delta_{0}+\frac{\mathrm{k}}{2 \pi \mathrm{C}} \mathrm{I}^{2} \\
& \nabla \mathrm{~V} \text { - Voltage swing } \\
& \mathrm{I} \text { - RMS current }
\end{align*}
$$

For this case the voltage swing from Figure 4.3 is $\left(2 E+V_{c}\right)$. The rms current can be calculated from observation of the current waveform. There are two periods when the current flows in the capacitor. First when the IGBT turns off the current is approximately square in shape with a height equal to the load current for a duration $t_{s}$ determined by equations $4.2-5,4.2-7$ and $4.2-11$ :

$$
\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{s}}=\frac{t_{\mathrm{f}}}{2}+\frac{2 \mathrm{E} \mathrm{C}}{\mathrm{~s}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}} \quad+\frac{1}{\omega_{\mathrm{s}}} \operatorname{Sin}^{-1}\left[\frac{\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{c}}}{\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}\right]
$$

The rms value for the period $t_{s}$ is equal to the load current $I_{L}$. The second time that $\mathrm{C}_{\mathbf{s}}$ carries current is during the resonant resetting period. The rms current for this period has already been derived equation 4.3-9 when the conduction losses for diode $D_{r}$ were being calculated. This current can be assumed to be independent of the load and in the worst case is $I\left(t_{r}\right)_{r m s}=32.9 \mathrm{~A}$ for a period of $t_{r}=1.47 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ as previously calculated. The resultant rms current for the two components can be calculated as follows:

$$
I_{\mathrm{rms}}=\sqrt{\frac{t_{\mathrm{s}}}{T} I_{L}^{2}+\frac{t_{r}}{T} I\left(t_{r}\right)_{\mathrm{rms}}^{2}}
$$

At full load current $t_{s}$ will be:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{s}}=\frac{t_{\mathrm{f}}}{2}+\frac{2 \mathrm{E} \mathrm{C} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}+\frac{1}{\omega_{\mathrm{s}}} \operatorname{Sin}^{-1}\left[\frac{\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{c}}}{\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{s}} I_{\mathrm{L}}}\right] \\
& \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{s}}=\frac{0.2}{2}+\frac{672 \times 0.05}{100}+\frac{1}{3.16} \operatorname{Sin}^{-1}\left[\frac{156}{6.32 \times 100}\right]=0.52 \mu \mathrm{~S}
\end{aligned}
$$

At full load the effective current carried by $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ is:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rms}}=\sqrt{\frac{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{s}}}{\mathrm{~T}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}^{2}+\frac{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{r}}}{\mathrm{~T}} \mathrm{I}\left(\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{r}}\right)_{\mathrm{rms}}^{2}} \\
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rms}}=\sqrt{\frac{0.52}{20} \times 100^{2}+\frac{1.47}{20} \times 32.9^{2}}=18.4 \mathrm{~A}
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore from equation 4.3-15 the dielectric loss in the worst case would be given by:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{P}=\frac{\pi}{4} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}\left(2 \mathrm{E}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}\right)^{2} \operatorname{Tan} \delta_{0}+\frac{\mathrm{k}}{2 \pi \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}} 18.4^{2} \\
& \mathrm{P}=\frac{\pi}{4} \times 0.05 \times 0.05 \times(672+156) \operatorname{Tan} \delta_{0}+\frac{18.4^{2}}{2 \pi \times 0.05 \times 10^{-6}} \mathrm{k} \\
& \mathrm{P}=1346 \operatorname{Tan} \delta_{0}+1078 \times 10^{-6} \mathrm{k}
\end{align*}
$$

The best available capacitor has the following characteristics, [38]:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Tan } \delta_{0}=0.3 \times 10^{-3} @ \mathrm{f}=1 \mathrm{kHz} \\
& \mathrm{k}=1.2 \times 10^{-8}
\end{aligned}
$$

This would result in:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{P}=1346 \text { Tan } \delta_{0}+1078 \times 10^{-6} \mathrm{k} \\
& \mathrm{P}=1346 \times 0.3 \times 10^{-3}+1078 \times 10^{-6} \times 1.2 \times 10^{-8}=13.33 \mathrm{watts}
\end{aligned}
$$

This verifies that a single capacitor would be grossly overloaded. In addition to this Roderstien, [38] do not recommend operating voltages greater than $500 \mathrm{~V}_{\text {rms }}$ for their 2 kV rated capacitors in 50 kHz sinewave applications. This suggested that two series capacitors would be required plus a number of parallel paths to reduce the effective current in each capacitor. The real strength in using multiple capacitors lies in the increased surface area available for dissipation of heat. Availability dictated the use of 2200 pF 2 kV (MKP 1841) capacitors in a series parallel array (46 parallel paths ; two series capacitors) to build up the $0.05 \mu \mathrm{~F}$ capacitor. This would reduce the effective current in each capacitor to 0.4 A and the voltage swing to 414 V so that the loss per capacitor would now be:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{P} & =\frac{\pi}{4} \times 2.2 \times 10^{-9} \times 0.05 \times(414)^{2} \times 0.3 \times 10^{-3}+\frac{0.4^{2}}{2 \pi \times 2.2 \times 10^{-9}} 1.2 \times 10^{-8} \\
& =0.14 \text { watts }
\end{aligned}
$$

The total loss would therefore be, $92 \times 0.14$ which is equal to 12.9 watts. Which is the same as before but in the multiple capacitor case this power is dissipated over a substantially greater surface area. The surface area of the 92 capacitors is approximately $0.044 \mathrm{~m}^{2}$. The following equation relates the temperature rise to power dissipation for natural convection cooling, [39]:

$$
\Delta \mathrm{T}=\left[\frac{\mathrm{P}}{3 \mathrm{~A}}\right]^{0.8}=\left[\frac{12.9}{3 \times 0.044}\right]^{0.8}=39.1^{\circ} \mathrm{C}
$$

Assuming $50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ambient temperature the capacitor temperature would be approximately $90^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. Since this is a worst case condition and the capacitors are rated for operation at $100^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$, the selected configuration will be conservative. A conservative approach is necessary since these capacitors must be mounted close to the IGBT for the snubber to be effective, which means ambient temperatures are high. Also a significant amount of heat will be conducted to the capacitor by the connection from the IGBT which contributes to this temperature rise.

### 4.4 Clamping System Design

The IGBT clamping system consists of diode $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{c}}$ and the Self oscillating inverter (SOI). The reverse maximum voltage subjected to the diode $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{c}}$ is $2 \mathrm{E}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}=828 \mathrm{~V}$ plus any overshoot due to forward recovery and stray inductance. This was considered to be to high for a single 1000 V diode. Hence two diodes are used in series with appropriate voltage sharing/clamping networks. Additionally under surge conditions these diodes are subjected to high switching loss as well as high conduction losses. To accommodate this two parallel paths were required as discussed in Section 4.2. Figure 4.10 shows the complete snubber module including the current balancing transformer which forces dynamic current sharing between the parallel sets. The losses under the worst case condition have already been calculated in Section 4.2 an so they are not repeated here. However as part of the cooling requirement calculation the losses in $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{c}}$ will be calculated at full load and $50 \%$ duty ratio in a later Section 4.7.

Shown in Figure 4.11 is a schematic diagram of the 500 watt self oscillating converter (SOI) which provides the clamping action on the IGBT collector emitter voltage during turn off. The self oscillating type converter is ideal for this application as it is self contained requiring no control circuitry, [9]. This makes it very robust in the high EMI environment where it must work. The output section of the SOI is a simple bridge rectifier which feeds the DC bus. The DC bus voltage via the transformer turns ratio is reflected to the input. This makes the clamp voltage equal to $(13 / 28) \times \mathrm{E}$. The voltage across the input capacitors $\mathrm{C}_{3}-\mathrm{C}_{12}$ is voltage stiff. This is necessary since it is being supplied from essentially a pulsed current source. Because the SOI must be located some distance from the power circuit local decoupling capacitors were also necessary as shown in Figure 4.10.

The series inductor $\mathrm{L}_{3}$ acts to smooth the the input current to the SOI.


Figure 4.10 Clamp Module Schematic


Figure 4.11500 watt Self Osccillating Inverter Schematic

The pulsed currents are absorbed by the local decoupling capacitors which are sized to limit the resulting voltage ripple to a low level. A relatively constant DC current flows to the SOI via $\mathrm{L}_{3}$ into a constant voltage determined by the bus voltage. Resistor $\mathrm{R}_{14}$ of Figure 4-11 provides damping for the $\mathrm{L}-\mathrm{C}$ circuit formed. The SOI uses saturation of an auxiliary inductor $L_{1} / L_{2}$ to provide the necessary positive feedback to give oscillation. This is similar in principle to the use of an auxiliary transformer, [9]. The traditional self oscillating converter relies on saturation of the main transformer for its operation. This however results in very high core losses and unacceptable operating temperatures. The auxiliary transformer overcomes this problem since only it saturates while the main transformer can be designed to run at much lower peak flux levels.

The SOI is started by $R_{12}$ feeding a current to the gate of $V_{13}$. The resistance from $V_{13}$ gate to ground is $470 \Omega$, ( $\mathrm{R}_{7}$ via feedback winding on T 1 ). This means that an input voltage of around 75 V is necessary to obtain the mosfet threshold voltage of 3V. Once the mosfet starts to turn on, voltage is applied across the primary of T1 which excites the feedback winding. This causes the gate voltage of $\mathrm{V}_{13}$ to rise via the $R_{7}, R_{8} / C_{1}$ network, and hence the mosfet will turn solidly on. The $R_{8} / C_{1}$ series circuit quickens the charging of the fet gate. The Zener diode $\mathrm{V}_{11}$ clamps the gate voltage at a safe level. The other fet, $\mathrm{V}_{14}$, is maintained in an off state by a negative voltage applied to its gate which is limited to 0.7 V by $\mathrm{V}_{12}$ conducting in the forward direction. The feedback voltage also excites the coupled inductors $\mathrm{L}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{L}_{2}$.

The voltage applied across $L_{1} / L_{2}$ is maintained essentially constant by zener diodes $V_{1}, V_{2}, V_{3}$ and $V_{4}$. This makes the magnetisation of $L_{1} / L_{2}$ independent of the bus voltage and hence, the operating frequency is independent of the bus voltage. The current in $L_{1} / L_{2}$ rises linearly until saturation occurs. Under saturation the current increases rapidly. The inductor has been designed to saturate at 80 mA which also corresponds to a 1.2 V drop across $\mathrm{R}_{2}(15 \Omega)$.

The voltage across $R_{2}$ drives the high gain darlington transistor $V_{g}$. Because of the saturation in the inductor the transistor is driven strongly and therefore turns on quickly. Once the transistor turns on the mosfet, $\mathrm{V}_{13}$, gate voltage is removed and hence it is turned off. The magnetising flux in the main transformer $T_{1}$ which is at its peak level will cause a secondary current to be established such that $\mathrm{V}_{27}$ and $\mathrm{V}_{26}$ are forward biased. Hence the voltage across the winding reverses and the core begins to de-magnetise. The reversal of the voltage causes fet $V_{14}$ to obtain positive gate drive and it switches on. The inductor $\mathrm{L}_{1} / \mathrm{L}_{2}$ now excited with a reverse voltage will eventually saturate in the opposite direction resulting in $\mathrm{V}_{14}$ being switched off and $V_{13}$ switching on again. The saturation level of $L_{1} / L_{2}$ and the value of $R_{2} / R_{3}$ control the operating frequency. This is not effected by the bus voltage since the magnetising voltage for $L_{1} / L_{2}$ is clamped by zener diodes.

The inductor $L_{1} / L_{2}$ is ungapped and preferably should have a square $B-H$ characteristic to provide high drive to the transistor. Siemens N30 material is appropriate, [9]. A Siemens RM10-N30 core was successfully used in this design. The oscillation frequency was set to be 30 kHz . The main transformer is designed using normal high frequency design techniques, the core being used is a Siemens EC-70; N27. The average current input to the SOI at full load can be calculated as follows. From equation $4.2-15$ and $4.2-16$ the average current flowing through the clamp at high loads ( $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}} \gg \frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}}{\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{s}}}$ ) is approximately:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{avg}} \approx \frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}{2}
$$

This current flows for the period $t_{4}$ to $t_{5}$ shown in Figure 4.3 which is given by:

$$
\mathrm{t}_{5}-\mathrm{t}_{4} \approx \frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}} \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}}}{\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{c}}}
$$

The charge transferred per cycle under the worst case conditions will be:

$$
\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{c}}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}^{2} \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}}}{2 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{c}}}=\frac{100^{2} \times 2}{2 \times 104}=96 \mu \mathrm{C}
$$

The SOI average current will therefore be:

$$
I_{s o i}=f_{s} \times Q_{c}=0.05 \times 96=4.8 \mathrm{~A}
$$

This is calculated at the lowest bus voltage which yields the minimum operating clamp voltage (104V) and hence the maximum SOI current. The Power being transferred would be:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{soi}} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{soi}}=4.8 \times 104=499 \mathrm{watts}
$$

Since as $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}$ increases the clamps current decreases the SOI power remains constant.

The complete SOI was accurately modeled using the Spice circuit simulation package, [16], prior to construction. In fact the prototype design was debugged using this simulation tool. This was a great advantage since no debugging was necessary on the actual unit. The simulation file together with the node diagram a presented in Appendix A.

Figure 4-12 shows a plot of the measured efficiency as a function of input current. It was found that the converter had a maximum efficiency of $92.5 \%$ at 3.25 A falling off to $90 \%$ at 5 A . Because the unit uses mosfets the low load efficiency is also quite good achieving $70 \%$ efficiency at 0.5 A .


Figure 4.12 SOI Efficiency as a Function of Input Current

### 4.5 Freewheel Diode Module Design

Shown in Figure 4.13 is a schematic diagram of the freewheel diode module. Following is a brief description of the function of the components which make up this module. To obtain acceptable levels of stress on the components it was necessary to use a system of six parallel sets of two DSEI 60-10A diodes in series. Each diode has small individual snubbers to assist in dynamic voltage sharing and to assist in reducing the maximum reverse voltage at snap off. Diodes may not share reverse voltage in steady state due to differences in their reverse leakage currents. This is corrected by placing "swamping" resistors in parallel with the diodes.

Current flowing in each freewheel diode at snap off is diverted to individual clamp diodes which together form $D_{x}$. Capacitor $C_{x}$ decouples the cathodes of $D_{x}$ to the anodes of $D_{f}$ and the energy originally stored in $L_{f}$ is dissipated in $R_{x}$.

The resistors collectively denoted $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}$ have the function of forcing current sharing in the six parallel sets of diodes. This is necessary since the forward voltage drop can vary between diodes. Selection of $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}$ will now be considered. Selection of the value of $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}$ depends on the expected variation in the forward threshold potential $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{to}}$ over the number of parallel diodes used. In many cases manufactures will give typical and maximum ( $90 \%$ Confidence) values for $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{to}}$. From this the variance and hence the standard deviation can be determined assuming a normally distributed population. The resistors $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}$ are than sized such that for the given variation in $\mathrm{V}_{\text {to }}$ the variation in $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{d}}$ is an acceptable amount. A relationship relating the variance in diode forward current to the variance in forward voltage drop for a given value of series resistance is derived in Appendix B. This expression is shown to be:

$$
\sigma_{\mathrm{v}}=\mathrm{R} \sigma_{\mathrm{i}}
$$



Figure 4.13 Freewheel Diode Module Schematic

Unfortunately the manufacturer of the DSEI60-10A diode only supplies a maximum value for $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{to}}$. Review of data from other diode manufacturers indicates that the typical standard deviation for $\mathrm{V}_{\text {to }}$ is $150 \mathrm{mV},[20-22$ ]. The Freewheel diode module is six sets of two series diodes. Two series diodes would exhibit a standard deviation of $\sqrt{2}$ times the standard deviation for a single unit. Therefore:

$$
\sigma_{\mathrm{v}}=\sqrt{2} \times 0.15=0.21 \mathrm{~V}
$$

The value of $R_{f}$ was chosen to be $100 \mathrm{~m} \Omega$ which will now be shown to be an appropriate value. The mean current is given by:

$$
\overline{\mathrm{I}}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}}{n}=16.67 \mathrm{~A} @ \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}=100 \mathrm{~A} \text { and } n=6(\text { six diodes })
$$

From equation 4-2 the current standard deviation will be given by:

$$
\sigma_{\mathrm{i}}=\frac{\sigma_{\mathrm{v}}}{\mathrm{R}}=\frac{0.21}{0.1}=2.1 \mathrm{~A}
$$

For $90 \%$ confidence the maximum current for any diode will be within 1.28 standard deviations of the mean assuming a normally distributed population, [40]. Therefore:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{d}}=\mathrm{I} \pm 1.28 \sigma_{\mathrm{i}}=16.67 \pm 1.28 \times 2.1=16.67 \pm 2.7 \mathrm{~A}
$$

This is $16 \%$ which represents an acceptable maximum deviation from the mean value.

The worst case power dissipation in $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}$ will be at the minimum duty ratio (12.5\%) at the full rated output of 100 A .

$$
P=\left[\sqrt{1-D} \frac{I_{L}}{n}\right]^{2} \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}
$$

$$
P=\left[\sqrt{1-0.125} \frac{100}{6}\right]^{2} 0.1=24.3 \mathrm{watts}
$$

The total power dissipation $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}$ is therefore 146 Watts at 100 A . From the Arcol Metal Clad Resistor data sheet, [41], it can be deduced that the resistor element to case thermal resistance for 50 watt resistors are:

$$
50 \text { watt } \quad R_{\operatorname{th}(e-c)}=5^{\circ} \mathrm{C} / \mathrm{watt}
$$

Also the maximum allowed internal element temperature $\left(\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{e}}\right)$ is $275^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. All the metal clad resistors are mounted on the main heatsink. The assumed heatsink temperature as discussed in Section 4.1 is $80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$, which means that $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{c}}=80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. Using this information the maximum internal element temperature will be:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{e}}=\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{e}} \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{th}}(\mathrm{e}-\mathrm{c})+\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{c}} \\
& \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{e}}=24.3 \times 5+80=202^{\circ} \mathrm{C}
\end{aligned}
$$

The freewheel diode temperature rise will now be calculated at a load of 100 A and at the worst case duty ratio of $12.5 \%$. The diode switching loss will be accurately calculated Using the method outlined in Chapter Three: From the DSE1 60-10A data sheet, [19]:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}=32 \mathrm{~A} @ \mathrm{~m}=480 \mathrm{~A} / \mu \mathrm{S}, \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}=60 \mathrm{~A}, \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j}}=100^{\circ} \mathrm{C}
$$

A junction temperature of $125^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ will be assumed. The maximum bus voltage, 672 V , will also be used since this represents the worst case. The calculation of the reverse maximum current is done in Appendix C and is shown to be 5.87 A . The total freewheel diode maximum reverse current would then be 35.2 A .

The switching component of the power loss assuming instantaneous rise of reverse voltage would be given by:

$$
P_{s}=f_{s} V_{r m} Q_{2}
$$

Assuming that $\mathrm{Q}_{1}=\mathrm{Q}_{2}$ :

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q_{2}=Q_{1}=\frac{I_{\mathrm{rm}}^{2}}{2 \mathrm{~m}} \\
=\frac{(5.87)^{2}}{2 \times 56.0}=0.308 \mu \mathrm{C} \\
P_{\mathrm{S}}=f_{\mathrm{S}} V_{\mathrm{rm}} Q_{2} \\
=0.05 \times 336 \times 0.308=5.17 \mathrm{watts}
\end{gathered}
$$

The diode conduction loss will now be calculated according to Chapter Three:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{favg}} & =\frac{(1-\mathrm{D}) \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}{6} \\
& =\frac{(1-0.125) 100}{6}=14.58 \mathrm{Amps} \\
\mathrm{I}_{\text {favg }} & =\frac{\sqrt{1-\mathrm{D}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}{6} \\
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{frms}} & =\frac{\sqrt{1-0.125}}{6} \times 100=15.59 \mathrm{~A} \\
\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{to}} & =\left[-3 \times 10^{-3} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j}}+1.85\right] \\
\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}} & =6 \times 10^{-3} \\
\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{c}} & =\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{favg}} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{to}}+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{frms}}^{2} \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}} \\
\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{c}} & =14.58 \times\left[-3 \times 10^{-3} \times 125+1.85\right]+6 \times 10^{-3} \times(15.59)^{2}=23.0 \text { watts }
\end{aligned}
$$

The total loss per diode will be:

$$
\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{t}}=23+5.17=28.2 \mathrm{watts}
$$

And the total freewheel diode loss would be 338 watts. The junction temperature rise would be determined by the total thermal resistance to the heatsink and the heatsink temperature. The diodes are isolated from the heatsink by silicon rubber isolation sheet which has a thermal resistance of $0.75^{\circ} \mathrm{C} /$ watt. From the DSEI60-10A data the junction to case resistance is $0.75^{\circ} \mathrm{C} /$ watt. The junction temperature will therefore be:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j}}=\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{h}}+\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{th}(\mathrm{c}-\mathrm{s})} \times \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{t}}+\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{th}(\mathrm{j}-\mathrm{c})} \times \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{t}} \quad 4.5-6 \\
& \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j}}=80+0.75 \times 28.2+0.75 \times 28.2=122^{\circ} \mathrm{C}
\end{aligned}
$$

The assumption of $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j}}=125^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ was conservative in this instance. The junction temperature is high but as this is a worst case operating condition it is considered safe.

The diode $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{x}}$ consists of $6 \times$ BY329-1200 medium speed diodes. Medium speed diodes have been used in an effort to reduce the forward recovery voltage as previously discussed. The anodes of $D_{x}$ are decoupled by $C_{x}$ to the anodes of the freewheel diodes to provide an initial low inductance path for the reverse recovery current that has been established in $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$.

The components $L_{f}, \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{x}}$ and $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{x}}$ form a parallel LCR circuit as indicated in Figure 4.14. The components $R_{x}$ and $C_{x}$ are selected such that the reverse current in $L_{f}$ is reduced to zero within the minimum on time for the IGBT and the overshoot voltage across $D_{f}$ restricted to the lowest possible amount. At $t_{1}$ the reverse recovery current in diode $D_{f}$ reaches its maximum level $\left(I_{r m}\right)$. During the period $t_{1}$ to $t_{2}$ diode $D_{f}$ has snapped off and the current in $L_{f}$ is diverted to $C_{x}$ and $R_{x}$ via $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{x}}$.

$$
\mathrm{t}=\mathrm{t}_{1} \quad \mathrm{t}_{1}<\mathrm{t}<\mathrm{t}_{2} \quad \mathrm{t}_{2}<\mathrm{t}<\mathrm{t}_{3}
$$



Figure 4.14 Voltage Clamping Action of Cx and Rx

The LCR circuit is made underdamped so that the diode $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{x}}$ ceases conduction within the minimum IGBT on time which is $2.5 \mu \mathrm{~S}$. If the diode $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{x}}$ is still conducting when the IGBT turns off its current will be reduced at a high rate due to the quickly rising emitter voltage. This results in an excessive commutating $d \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{dt}$ for diode $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{x}}$. During period $\mathrm{t}_{2}$ to $\mathrm{t}_{3}$ capacitor $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{x}}$ partially discharges through $R_{x}$ and the supply voltage. It can be shown that the inductor current during period $t_{1}$ to $t_{2}$ of the transient is given by:

$$
\begin{align*}
& I_{L}=\sqrt{1-\zeta_{x}^{2}} e^{-a t} \sin [\omega t+\phi] \\
& \phi=\tan ^{-1}\left[\frac{\sqrt{1-\zeta_{x}^{2}}}{\zeta_{x}}\right] \\
& \mathrm{a}=\zeta_{\mathrm{x}} \omega_{\mathrm{x}} \\
& \omega=\omega_{\mathrm{x}} \sqrt{1-\zeta_{\mathrm{x}}^{2}} \\
& \omega_{\mathrm{x}}=\sqrt{L_{\mathrm{f}} C_{x}} \\
& \zeta_{\mathrm{x}}=\frac{1}{2} \frac{Z_{\mathrm{x}}}{\mathrm{R}} \\
& \mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{x}}=\sqrt{\frac{L_{\mathrm{f}}}{C_{x}}}
\end{align*}
$$

If the damping ratio $\left(\zeta_{\mathrm{x}}\right)$ is small $(<0.05)$ equation 4-5 approximates to:

$$
I_{L}=I(0) \sin \left[\omega_{x} t+\frac{\pi}{2}\right]
$$

The initial current $I(0)$ is just $I_{\text {rm }}$. The inductor current decays sinusoidally during the period $t_{1}$ to $t_{2}$ until $D_{x}$ is reverse biased. The total charge transferred through $D_{x}$ each cycle is given by:

$$
\Delta \mathrm{Q}=\mathrm{I}_{\text {avg }} \frac{\mathrm{t}_{\underline{x}}}{4}
$$

Where:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{avg}}=\frac{2}{\pi} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{p}}=\frac{2}{\pi} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}} \\
& \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{x}}=\frac{2 \pi}{\omega_{\mathrm{x}}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore:

$$
\Delta \mathrm{Q}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}}{\omega_{\mathrm{x}}}
$$

Initially some charge flows in $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{x}}$ and the remainder is stored in $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{x}}$. Finally all the charge must flow through $R_{x}$. The average current in $R_{x}$ is therefore:

$$
I_{R_{x}(a v g)}=\Delta Q f_{s}=\frac{I_{r m}}{\omega_{\mathrm{x}}} f_{s}
$$

The average capacitor voltage will then be:

$$
\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{x}}(\mathrm{avg})}=2 \mathrm{E}+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{x}}(\mathrm{avg})} \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{x}}
$$

The capacitor voltage increment during period $t_{1}$ to $t_{2}$ can be calculated by recognising that the average charge transfer rate through $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{x}}$ is $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{x}}(\operatorname{avg})}$.

Therefore:

$$
\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{x}}(2)}=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{x}}(\text { avg })} \frac{\mathrm{T}}{4}=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{x}}(\text { avg })} \frac{\pi}{2 \omega_{n}}
$$

It follows that the charge stored in $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{x}}$ must be given by:

$$
Q_{C_{x}(2)}=\Delta Q-Q_{R_{x}(2)}
$$

Therefore the increment in voltage will be:

$$
\Delta V=\frac{Q_{C_{x}(2)}}{C_{x}}
$$

It is the maximum voltage generated across $C_{x}$ which is of interest to us since this appears across the freewheel diodes. $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{x}}(\max )}$ is given by:

$$
\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{x}}(\max )}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{x}}(\text { avg })}+\frac{\Delta \mathrm{V}}{2}
$$

The values selected for $C_{x}$ and $R_{x}$ is as follows:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{x}}=0.9 \mu \mathrm{~F} \\
& \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{x}}=23.5 \Omega
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore:

$$
\omega_{\mathrm{x}}=\sqrt{\frac{1}{\mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{x}}}}=\sqrt{2 \times 0.9}=0.745 \mathrm{Mr} / \mathrm{s}=745 \times 10^{3} \mathrm{r} / \mathrm{s}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{x}}=\frac{2 \pi}{\omega_{\mathrm{x}}}=8.4 \mu \mathrm{~S} \\
& \Delta \mathrm{Q}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}}{\omega_{\mathrm{x}}}=\frac{35.22}{745 \mathrm{e} 3}=47.3 \mu \mathrm{C} \\
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{x}}(\mathrm{avg})}=\Delta \mathrm{Q} \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}=47.3 \times 0.05=2.36 \mathrm{~A} \\
& \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{x}}(\mathrm{avg})}=2 \mathrm{E}+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{x}}(\mathrm{avg})} \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{x}}=672+2.36 \times 23.5=728 \mathrm{~V} \\
& \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{x}}(2)}=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{x}}(\mathrm{avg})} \frac{\mathrm{T}}{4}=2.36 \times \frac{8.4}{4}=5.0 \mu \mathrm{C} \\
& \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{x}}(2)}=\Delta \mathrm{Q}-\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{x}}(2)}=47.3-5.0=42.3 \mu \mathrm{C} \\
& \quad \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{C}_{x}(2)}=\frac{42.3}{0.9}=47 \mathrm{~V} \\
& \Delta \mathrm{~V}=\frac{C_{x}}{C_{x}} \\
& \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{x}}(\mathrm{avg})}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{x}}(\mathrm{avg})}+\frac{\Delta \mathrm{V}}{2}=728+23.5=752 \mathrm{~V}
\end{aligned}
$$

The conduction time for diode $D_{x}$ will be given by:

$$
{ }^{t} D_{x}=\frac{T}{4}=2.1 \mu \mathrm{~S}
$$

Which is inside the required $2.5 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ with sufficient margin to allow for component variations. At time $t_{1}$ the reverse voltage seen by $D_{f}$ will be 705 V plus the forward recovery voltage across $D_{x}$ (approximately 50 V ) giving a total of 755 V . The voltage $t_{2}$ is approximately the same as this. This is quite acceptable since it is shared across two diodes. However had only single diodes been used for $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{f}}$ it was felt that there would not be sufficient margin.

The power dissipation in $R_{x}$ will be:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{x}}}=\frac{1}{2} \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}{ }^{2} \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}} \\
& \quad=0.5 \times 2 \times(5.78 \times 6)^{2} \times 0.05=60 \mathrm{watts}
\end{aligned}
$$

The resistor $R_{x}$ was constructed from two parallel $47 \Omega 50$ watt metal clad resistors. The losses in diode $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{x}}$ can be calculated from the following previously derived data. The charge transferred through $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{x}}$ is (per diode):

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{x}}=\frac{\Delta \mathrm{Q}}{6}=\frac{47.3}{6}=7.9 \mu \mathrm{C} \\
& \text { Average current }=\frac{4 \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{x}}}{\mathrm{~T}}=\frac{4 \times 7.9}{8.4}=3.76 \mathrm{~A}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\text { BY329-1200 forward voltage drop( } \max ) @ 4 \mathrm{~A}=1.3 \mathrm{~V},[22]
$$

The current wave form is sinusoidal and so the maximum dI/Dt occurs at the zero crossing, using this figure plus taking the forward current as being the average for the period will give a reasonable estimate for the reverse recovery loss:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{dI} / \mathrm{dt}=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}} \omega_{n}=5.87 \times 0.74 \quad 4.4 \mathrm{~A} / \mu \mathrm{S} \text { (per diode) } \\
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}=3.76 \mathrm{~A}
\end{aligned}
$$

Since the reverse voltage across $D_{x}$ is clamped by $D_{f}$ :

$$
\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{rm}}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{x}}(\max )}=752 \mathrm{~V}
$$

From the Philips power diode data book, [22], the BY329-1200 diodes switching power loss can be determined from the given nomogram (Figure 8).

For the operating conditions above the switching loss is 3.5 watts at a junction temperature of $150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. The conduction loss will be given by:

$$
P_{\mathrm{c}} \approx \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{x}} \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}=1.3 \times 7.9 \times 0.05=0.5 \mathrm{watts}
$$

Then the total loss per diode ( $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{x}}}$ ) will be 4watts and the total loss $\left(\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{t}}\right)$ in $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{x}}$ is 24 watts under worst case conditions. The six diodes that make up $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{x}}$ are mounted on a separate aluminum U -section heatsink. If an ambient temperature of $50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ and a worst case heatsink temperature of $100^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ is assumed, then the required thermal resistance of the heatsink will be:

$$
\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{th}(\mathrm{~h}-\mathrm{a})}=\frac{100-50}{24}=2^{\circ} \mathrm{C} / \mathrm{watt}
$$

The diodes are isolated from the heatsink using silicon pads which have a thermal resistance of $1.3^{\circ} \mathrm{C} /$ watt for the TO220 case device. The diodes junction to case thermal resistance is $3^{\circ} \mathrm{C} /$ watt. Therefore:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& T_{j}=P_{D_{x}}\left[R_{t h(j-c)}+R_{t h(c-h)}\right]+P_{t} R_{t h(h-a)}+T_{a} \\
& T_{j}=4 \times(3+1.3)+24 \times 2+50=115^{\circ} C
\end{aligned}
$$

This is quite acceptable for a worst case condition.

### 4.6 IGBT Module Design

This module consists of the IGBT and its associated gate driver. First the gate drive system will be discussed. In Appendix D there is a full schematic of the gate drive circuit. Only a brief discussion of the operational features will be given here, rather than a detailed circuit analysis. Shown in Figure 4.15 is a block diagram of the gate driver.

The basic requirement of the driver is to be able to supply pulsed currents to charge and discharge the IGBT gate capacitance to $\pm 15 \mathrm{~V}$. Because the IGBT's used are quite large the effective input capacitance is also considerable, in the order of $50,000 \mathrm{pF}$. Accordingly the drive requirements are also considerable. A gate charge of $0.75 \mu \mathrm{C}$ must be supplied to bring the IGBT into full conduction. To obtain the rise time that the devices are capable, the $0.75 \mu \mathrm{C}$ must be supplied within 150 nS at a rate of 5 A . This represents 50 mA of dc current from the power supply for a 50 kHz switch freqency. A similar current would be associated with turning the IGBT off.

The gate driver is isolated from ground and is at the emitter potential and therefore swings at rates up to $2000 \mathrm{~V} / \mu \mathrm{S}$ relative to ground as the IGBT switches. As well as this the gate driver is located in close proximity to the power circuit where EMI would be high. These factors dictated the use of special techniques to yield a reliable design. Previous experience in other projects had taught that standard integrated circuit devices can display erratic operation in these conditions. Presumably because the currents often used in these circuits are in the microamp range, the extreme $\mathrm{dV} / \mathrm{dt}$ 's that are present in high power converters can induce currents that modify the circuit operation. For example at $2000 \mathrm{~V} / \mu \mathrm{S}, 2 \mathrm{~mA}$ would flow in a capacitance of only 1 pF . It was therefore decided from the outset to the design the gate driver using completely discrete circuitry with current levels in the region of tens of milliamps where possible.


Figure 4.15 Gate Driver Block Diagram

The drive signal is delivered to the driver via a fiber optic cable which avoids any coupling back into the main control circuits. The main controller can be located quite remotely from the converters and suitably screened so there is no possibility of induced signals and therefore erratic and perhaps dangerous operation. Power is supplied to the driver from an SMPS at 100 kHz squarewave. This is transformer coupled, rectified and filtered before being passed through a discrete $\pm 15 \mathrm{~V}$ current limited regulator. Because of the relatively high current levels used in the circuit plus the reasonably high drive requirements the positive regulator has to be capable of 500 mA . Current limiting is set at 800 mA .

The output stage is bipolar supplying $\pm 15 \mathrm{~V}$ via a $3 \Omega$ resistance to the gate. The "ON" status of the IGBT gate is fed back to the main controller via a second fiber optic cable. This is used by the controller to verify the integrity of the driver and IGBT.

An important feature of the driver is the collector emitter voltage sensing system. This system ensures in the event of a complete control system failure that the IGBT cannot be destroyed. In fact this driver a current controller in its own right. The collector emitter voltage $\left(\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ce}}\right)$, is sensed in the on state via a diode $\mathrm{D}_{1}$ as indicated in Figure 4.16. This diode has the function of blocking the high $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ce }}$ when the IGBT is off. The capacitor $C_{1}$ decouples the reverse recovery current in $D_{1}$. The diode $\mathrm{D}_{2}$ is used to match the voltage drop of diode $\mathrm{D}_{1}$ so that the voltage at point X is $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ce}}$. Thermally induced forward voltage drop variations are canceled using this method. A current source $I_{S}$ supplies 100 mA to both diodes. The current through $D_{2}$ is regulated at 50 mA by Current source $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}}$ so that the current through $\mathrm{D}_{1}$ is also always forced to be 50 mA regardless of the level of $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ce }}$. Since the diode currents are always identical this further increases the accuracy that the voltage at point X reproduces $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ce }}$.

The current source $I_{s}$ and hence the $V_{c e}$ sensing system becomes active after a short delay after the IGBT turns on. This allows time for the $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ce }}$ to fall to normal conduction levels before it is sensed, otherwise false tripping would occur. The $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ce }}$ is subtracted from a 2.3 V reference and fed to an integrator. The output from the integrator is compared with another reference which determines the volt-time product tripping level. If the volt time product exceeds this level a latch is tripped which inhibits the drive signal and the IGBT is switched off. The off status is transmitted to the main control board via a fiber optic cable and the drive command is removed for the remainder of the cycle. Regardless of the operation of the controller the latch is set for the remainder of the cycle and can only be reset by absence of the drive command for a finite period. Under normal operating conditions the volt-time product is not exceeded and no tripping occurs. In this case once the drive command goes low in the normal manner the integrator is reset ready for the next cycle.

The reason for subtracting the $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ce }}$ from 2.3 V is to make the circuit more sensitive to actual overloads. Because the voltage increases only by approximately 0.5 V for a increase in collector current of around 100A the sensitivity of the sensing circuit is quite important. If the IGBT in its on condition is looked upon as a crude current shunt then the $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ce }}$ tripping circuit operates similarly to a charge controller. That is the total charge that is allowed to pass each cycle is limited to a preset value. This means the device power dissipation can be limited to a safe level. The main controller uses output current control plus there is independent hysteresis current limiters on each buck converter. The $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ce }}$ sensing is a backup to these and is hence co-ordinated to operate at a higher device current, it should only become active if there is a malfunction in the controller, gate driver or the IGBT itself.

The gate driver +15 V supply rail is also monitored and the IGBT is inhibited if it is below 12V. This ensures that any malfunction of the driver or SMPS which causes low supply voltage can in no way damage the IGBT. Again the drive is latched off for the remainder of the cycle. Repeated inhibiting of the drive will cause the main controller to shut down the converter. The philosophy here is that critical monitoring and protection should be implemented as part of the the switching device itself. This thinking is also being applied to the numerous "SMART" power devices which are now becoming commercially available, [42].

Great effort has been taken to optimise the speed of each stage to minimise the delay time between logic high in the controller to the commencement of current flow to the gate. This optimisation process was done using a SPICE, [16], computer model of the basic fiber optic amplifier and bipolar power driver. Details of this model are presented in Appendix E. It was possible to reduce the delay time to less than 400 nS using various speed up networks and Schottky diode base collector clamps to the limit transistor saturation levels.

The IGBT worst case operating condition will now be examined. This occurs at maximum bus voltage, full load current and maximum duty ratio ( $\mathrm{T}_{\text {on }}=17.5 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ ). A factor that complicates the calculation is that during the first $2 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ the collector current is substantially above the load current due to the resonant reversal of the snubber capacitor and the reverse recovery of the freewheel diodes. This is further complicated by the fact that during the first $0.4 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ the device exhibits a high foward drop due to the absence of full conductivity modulation, as explained in chapter three.

Figure 4.16 shows the estimated collector current and collector emitter voltage for the first $2 \mu \mathrm{~S}$.


Figure 4.16 Predicted IGBT Voltage and Current During Turn On

The first $0.15 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ period is based on equation 3.7-3 and takes account of the fact that the voltage across $L_{f}$ linearly increases over this period.The waveforms were generated using a spreadsheet as shown in Table 4-1 with the following relationships:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 0<\mathrm{t}<0.15 \quad \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{c}}=\frac{\mathrm{E}}{\mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}} t_{\mathrm{r}}} \mathrm{t}^{2}+39 \operatorname{Sin}\left(\omega_{\mathrm{r}} \mathrm{t}\right), \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ce}}=-4480 \mathrm{t}+672 \\
& 0.15<\mathrm{t}<0.4 \quad \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{c}}=\frac{2 \mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{f}}}{\mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}}} \mathrm{t}+39 \operatorname{Sin}\left(\omega_{\mathrm{r}} \mathrm{t}\right), \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ce}}=-109 \mathrm{t}+46 \\
& 0.4<\mathrm{t}<0.5 \quad \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{c}}=-\frac{-2 \mathrm{E}}{\mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}}} \mathrm{t}+0.8 \frac{2 \mathrm{E}}{\mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}}}+39 \operatorname{Sin}\left(\omega_{\mathrm{r}} \mathrm{t}\right), \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ce}}=1.8+
\end{aligned}
$$

$5 \times 10^{-3} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{c}}$

$$
0.5<\mathrm{t}<2.0 \quad \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{c}}=100+39 \operatorname{Sin}\left(\omega_{\mathrm{r}} \mathrm{t}\right), \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ce}}=1.8+5 \times 10^{-3} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{c}}
$$

The steady state collector emitter voltage at $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{c}}=80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ was shown to be $1.8+5 \times$ $10^{-3} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{C}}$ in Chapter Three. The actual spreadsheet data is displayed in Table 4.1. The loss associated with each segment can be determined as follows:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& E_{i}=P d t=P_{i}\left(t_{i}-t_{i-1}\right) \\
& P_{t}=f_{s} \sum_{i=1}^{n} P_{i}
\end{aligned}
$$

This has been done for $\mathrm{E}=336 \mathrm{~V}$ with the total loss associated with the first $2 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ of the conduction period being 48.7 watts. For the remaining $15.5 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ for the collector current will be equal to the load currentof 100A. The associated power dissipation from chapter three will be given by:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{P}_{2} & =\frac{15.5}{20} \times\left[1.8 \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}+5 \times 10^{-3} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}{ }^{2}\right] \\
& =\frac{15.5}{20} \times\left[1.8 \times 100+5 \times 10^{-3} \times 100^{2}\right] \\
& =178.3 \text { watts @ } \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{c}}=80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}
\end{aligned}
$$

| t (uS) | Ic (amps) | Vce(volts) | Pi(w) | Ei(uJ) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0.00 | 0.00 | 672.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| 0.05 | 5.88 | 448.00 | 2633.25 | 131.66 |
| 0.10 | 17.34 | 224.00 | 3883.35 | 194.17 |
| 0.15 | 34.36 | 33.00 | 1133.77 | 56.69 |
| 0.20 | 72.12 | 27.00 | 1947.24 | 97.36 |
| 0.25 | 99.01 | 21.00 | 2079.16 | 103.96 |
| 0.30 | 118.60 | 15.00 | 1779.02 | 88.95 |
| 0.35 | 138.08 | 9.00 | 1242.76 | 62.14 |
| 0.40 | 157.44 | 2.59 | 407.33 | 20.37 |
| 0.45 | 143.25 | 2.52 | 360.46 | 18.02 |
| 0.50 | 128.70 | 2.44 | 314.49 | 15.72 |
| 0.55 | 129.78 | 2.45 | 317.83 | 15.89 |
| 0.60 | 131.68 | 2.46 | 323.72 | 16.19 |
| 0.65 | 133.37 | 2.47 | 329.02 | 16.45 |
| 0.70 | 134.86 | 2. 47 | 333.69 | 16.68 |
| 0.75 | 136.13 | 2.48 | 337.70 | 16.89 |
| 0.80 | 137.18 | 2.49 | 341.01 | 17.05 |
| 0.85 | 137.99 | 2.49 | 343.60 | 17.18 |
| 0.90 | 138.57 | 2.49 | 345.43 | 17.27 |
| 0.95 | 138.91 | 2.49 | 346.50 | 17.33 |
| 1.00 | 139.00 | 2.49 | 346.80 | 17.34 |
| 1.05 | 138.85 | 2.49 | 346.32 | 17.32 |
| 1. 10 | 138.46 | 2.49 | 345.07 | 17.25 |
| 1.15 | 137.82 | 2.49 | 343.06 | 17.15 |
| 1.20 | 136.96 | 2.48 | 340.31 | 17.02 |
| 1.25 | 135.86 | 2.48 | 336.83 | 16.84 |
| 1.30 | 134.53 | 2. 47 | 332.66 | 16.63 |
| 1.35 | 133.00 | 2.46 | 327.84 | 16.39 |
| 1.40 | 131.25 | 2. 46 | 322.39 | 16.12 |
| 1.45 | 129.32 | 2.45 | 316.38 | 15.82 |
| 1.50 | 127.19 | 2.44 | 309.84 | 15.49 |
| 1.60 | 122.46 | 2.41 | 295.40 | 29.54 |
| 1.70 | 117.16 | 2.39 | 279.52 | 27.95 |
| 1.80 | 111.44 | 2.36 | 262.67 | 26.27 |
| 1.90 | 105.43 | 2.33 | 245.34 | 24.53 |
| 2.00 | 99.28 | 2.30 | 227.99 | 22.80 |
|  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & E=\text { Sum } \\ & P t=f s \cdot E \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{r} 974.62 \\ 48.73 \end{array}$ |

Table 4. IGBT Turn On Power Dissipation Spreadsheet

The remaining loss is that associated with switch off and can be found from the previously derived equations $3.7-8$ and $3.7-9$ :

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s} 3}+\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s} 4}=\frac{\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}^{2} t_{\mathrm{f}}^{2}}{24 \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}}+\psi_{\mathrm{d}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}} \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}} \\
& \begin{aligned}
\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s} 3} & +\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s} 4}
\end{aligned} \\
& =\frac{0.05 \times 100^{2} \times 0.2^{2}}{24 \times 0.05}+3 \times 100 \times 0.05 \\
& \\
& \quad=31.7 \text { watts }
\end{aligned}
$$

The total IGBT loss at maximum bus volts and full load current with maximum duty ratio is therefore:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{t}} & =\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s} 1}+\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s} 2}+\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s} 3}+\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s} 4} \\
& =48.7+178.3+31.7=259.0 \mathrm{watts}
\end{aligned}
$$

The junction to case thermal resistance is $0.104^{\circ} \mathrm{C} /$ watt and the IGBT is mounted directly on the main heatsink. Therefore the worst case junction temperature will be:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j}} & =\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{t}} \times \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{th}}+\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{h}} \\
& =259.0 \times 0.104+80=107^{\circ} \mathrm{C}
\end{aligned}
$$

This is a quite satisfactory result. The turn on and turn off losses are also quite satisfactory since reducing them further by increasing $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$ and/or $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ would really only make a marginal improvement in the overall IGBT loss

### 4.7 Determination of the Cooling Requirement

In order calculate the cooling requirements the total power dissipation will be calculated at full load and maximum bus voltage with $50 \%$ duty ratio. The major power dissipating devices mounted on the heatsink are as follows:
(a) IGBT
(b) Freewheel diodes $\left(D_{f}\right)$
(c) Freewheel diodes current balancing resistors $\left(\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}\right)$
(d) Freewheel diode clamping resistor $\left(\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{x}}\right)$
(e) Snubber diodes $\left(\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{s}}\right)$
(f) Snubber resonant reversing diode ( $D_{r}$ )
(g) Clamp diodes ( $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{c}}$ )
(h) SOI

Each of these will be dealt with in turn.

IGBT

The power loss for $87.5 \%$ duty ratio is calculated in section 4.6. The loss in the first $2 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ after turn on and the turn off loss will be the same for the $50 \%$ case. However the
conduction time is now $8 \mu \mathrm{~S}$. The loss associated with this at 100 A will be:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{P}_{2} & =\left(1.8 \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}+5 \times 10^{-3} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}^{2}\right) \times \frac{8}{\mathrm{~T}} \\
& =\left(1.8 \times 100+5 \times 10^{-3} \times 100^{2}\right) \times \frac{8}{20} \\
& =92 \text { watts } @ \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{c}}=80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}
\end{aligned}
$$

The total IGBT loss will therefore be:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{t}} & =\mathrm{P}_{1}+\mathrm{P}_{2}+\mathrm{P}_{3} \\
& =48.7+92+31.7=173.3 \mathrm{watts}
\end{aligned}
$$

## Freewheel Diode

Again the switching loss will be the same as calculated in Section 4.5. which was 5.17 watts per diode. The average and rms currents for $50 \%$ duty ratio will be given by:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& I_{a v g}=\frac{1-D}{D} I_{L}=\frac{1-0.5}{6} \times 100=8.3 \mathrm{~A} \\
& I_{\text {rms }}=\frac{\sqrt{1-D}}{6} \times 100=11.8 \mathrm{~A}
\end{aligned}
$$

The loss will be given by:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{C}} & =1.48 \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{avg}}+6 \times 10^{-3} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rms}}^{2} \\
& =1.48 \times 8.3+6 \times 10^{-3} \times 11.8^{2} \\
& =13.12 \mathrm{watts}
\end{aligned}
$$

The total loss per diode then is:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{P} \text { (per diode) }=13.12+5.17=18.3 \text { watts } \\
& \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{t}}=12 \times 18.3=219 \text { watts }
\end{aligned}
$$

## Current Balancing Resistor ( $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}$ )

The rms current carried by each resistor from the previous calculation is 11.8 A . therefore the power dissipation will be:

$$
\mathrm{P}=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rms}}^{2} \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}=11.8^{2} \times 0.1=13.9 \text { watts }
$$

Therefore the total loss will be:

$$
P_{t}=6 \times 13.9=83.4 \text { watts }
$$

## Freewheel Diode Clamping Resistor ( $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{x}}$ )

The power dissipated in this resistor is not effected by the duty ratio so the losses will be as calculated in section 4.5 :

$$
P_{t}=60 \text { watts }
$$

## Snubber Diodes ( $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{s}}$ )

This diode under normal conditions does not have any significant switching loss. The conduction losses have been calculated in section 4.3 and is 4.3 watts/diode. Since there is two diodes the total loss is 8.6 watts.

Clamp Diode ( $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{c}}$ )

The diode $\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{c}}$ which is composed of two parallel paths at full load carries the following average rms currents:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{I}_{\text {avg }}=\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}{2} \\
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rms}}=\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}{\sqrt{3}}
\end{aligned}
$$

For a time duration approximated by:

$$
\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{c}}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}} \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}}}{\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{c}}}=\frac{100 \times 2}{156}=1.28 \mu \mathrm{~S}
$$

The conduction loss will therefore be given by:

$$
\begin{aligned}
P_{c} & =\left(I_{a v g} V_{t o}+I_{r m s}^{2} R_{f}\right) \frac{t_{c}}{T} \\
P_{c} & =\left(\frac{I_{L}}{2} V_{t o}+\frac{I_{L}}{12} R_{f}\right) \frac{t_{c}}{T} \\
& =\left(\frac{100}{4} \times 1.48+\frac{100}{12}^{2} \times 6 \times 10^{-3}\right) \times \frac{1.28}{20}=2.7 \text { watts }
\end{aligned}
$$

In normal operation this diode also exhibits switching loss. The dI/dt per diode being determined by the clamp voltage and $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{f}}$ :

$$
\frac{\mathrm{dI}}{\mathrm{dt}}=\mathrm{m}=\frac{1}{2} \frac{\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{c}}}{\mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}}}=\frac{156}{4}=39 \mathrm{~A} / \mu \mathrm{S}
$$

The forward current in each diode decays at $39 \mathrm{~A} / \mu \mathrm{S}$ from an initial value of 50 A to zero over $1.28 \mu \mathrm{~S}$. Prior to this however the diode was carrying no current. The effective forward current prior to commutation is therefore estimated to be half the initial current. It is thought that this will yield a realistic answer for the maximum reverse recovery current:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}} \approx \frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}}{4}=\frac{100}{4}=25 \mathrm{~A}
$$

In Appendix $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{r}}$ is found to be 3.9 A . Assuming $\mathrm{Q}_{1}=\mathrm{Q}_{2}$ and the the maximum reverse voltage of $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}=156 \mathrm{~V}$ is reached instantaneously at snap off:

$$
\begin{aligned}
P_{s} & =f_{s} V_{c} \frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}}{2 \mathrm{~m}} \\
& =0.05 \times 156 \times \frac{3.9^{2}}{2 \times 39} \\
& =1.5 \text { watt/diode }
\end{aligned}
$$

The total loss would be:

$$
\begin{aligned}
P_{t} & =(1.5+2.7) \times 4 \\
& =16.9 \text { watts for } 4 \text { diodes }
\end{aligned}
$$

## SOI

The SOI efficiency at 500 watts which corresponds to operation at 100 A is $90 \%$. Therefore the loss must be given by:

$$
P_{\text {loss }}=0.1 \times 500=50 \text { watts }
$$

The heatsink requirements will now be calculated. The total heatsink load will be the sum of the above losses:

IGBT - 173 watts
$\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{f}}-219$ watts
$\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}-83$ watts

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{Rx}-60 \text { watts } \\
& \mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{s}}-9 \text { watts } \\
& \mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{c}}-17 \text { watts } \\
& \text { SOI }-50 \text { watts } \\
& \text { Total- } 611 \text { watts }
\end{aligned}
$$

Adding $10 \%$ to allow for the miscellaneous heat sources such as diode snubbers gives a total heatsink load of 672 watts. To maintain a temperature of $80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ in $50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ambient the heatsink thermal resistance will be given by:

$$
\begin{aligned}
R_{t h(h-a)} & =\frac{T_{h}-T_{a}}{P_{t}} \\
& =\frac{80-50}{672}=0.045^{\circ} \mathrm{C} / \mathrm{watt}
\end{aligned}
$$

The heatsink chosen has a thermal resistance of $0.15^{\circ} \mathrm{C} /$ watt with natural convection cooling. Forced air cooling is used to reduce this down to $0.045^{\circ} \mathrm{C} /$ watt. The required air velocity is found by using the curve supplied in [43]. To obtain the required thermal resistance the air velocity would need to be $6 \mathrm{~m} / \mathrm{s}$. The surface area through which the air flows is estimated to be $0.009 \mathrm{~m}^{2}$. The volumetric air flow will therefore be given by:

$$
\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{air}}=0.009 \times 6=0.054 \mathrm{~m}^{3} / \mathrm{s}=54 \mathrm{l} / \mathrm{s}(120 \mathrm{cfm})
$$

Based on this calculation three 43 cfm fans were installed to provide the necessary cooling.

### 4.8 Buck Converter Experimental Results

A full scale buck converter was constructed to test the power circuit performance and determine any modifications that may be necessary. The only major change required to the original design was to the freewheel diode module. Because of the extra peak reverse voltage due to the unexpected high forward recovery in diode $D_{x}$ the freewheel diode had to be constructed from two series diodes. This has already been discussed in Chapter Three. The disadvantage of the use of two series diodes is the additional power loss.

In Section 4.7 the power loss was calculated for 100 A output at $50 \%$ duty ratio and the nominal bus voltage. Based on assumptions presented in previous sections the power loss was calculated to be 672 watts. Verification of this is particularly difficult since it represents only a small percentage of the output power. The only available power meters had a maximum current capability of 25A. At this level the accuracy is $0.1 \%$. In order to extend the current capability two external shunts were paralleled with the existing units. It is expected that combined unit had an accuracy of $0.5 \%$. Although this was considered to be adequate for accessing the basic functioning of the converter it is not good enough to verify the predicted power loss. The following calculation illustrates the problem.

For a bus voltage of 560 V , Load current of 100 A and $50 \%$ duty ratio the absolute power loss error can be calculated. Assuming a $0.5 \%$ error in the input and the output power measurement and a nominal power loss of 672 watts:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \Delta \mathrm{P}_{\text {in }}=0.005 \times 28672=143 \text { watts } \\
& \Delta \mathrm{P}_{\text {out }}=0.005 \times 28000=140 \text { watts }
\end{aligned}
$$

Since the power loss is given by:

$$
\mathrm{P}_{\text {loss }}=\mathrm{P}_{\text {in }}-\mathrm{P}_{\text {out }}
$$

The error in $\mathrm{P}_{\text {loss }}$ will be:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \Delta \mathrm{P}_{\text {loss }}=\sqrt{\Delta \mathrm{P}_{\text {in }}^{2}+\Delta \mathrm{P}_{\text {out }}^{2}} \\
& \Delta \mathrm{P}_{\text {loss }}=\sqrt{143^{2}+140^{2}}=200 \text { watts }
\end{aligned}
$$

An actual loss of 672 watts could be measured as low as 472 watts or as high as 872 watts. The conclusion is that this metering system is not accurate enough to verify the predicted loss. In addition to this because of the limited loading banks available the converter could not be loaded beyond 21 kW . The converter was tested at an output current of 75 A at $50 \%$ duty ratio ( 21 kW for a bus voltage of 560 V ) with the following results:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P_{\text {in }}=21733 \pm 109 \text { watts } \\
& P_{\text {out }}=21043 \pm 105 \text { watts } \\
& P_{\text {loss }}=690 \pm 151 \text { watts }
\end{aligned}
$$

The measured heatsink temperature with 120 cfm of forced air cooling was $55^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ in $30^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ambient temperature. From Section 4.7 the effective thermal resistance of the heatsink is $0.045^{\circ} \mathrm{C} /$ watt. This would imply that the power loss is:

$$
\mathrm{P}_{\text {loss }}=\frac{\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{r} \text { ise }}}{\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{th}}}=\frac{25}{0.045}=556 \mathrm{watts}
$$

This indicates that the actual loss is well on the low side of the error range. The power loss is dominated by "proportional to load current" components and therefore at a load of 100 A with other conditions remaining the same, the expected loss would be 741 watts, based on the temperature rise measurements above. The heatsink temperature at $50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ambient would be $83^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. Since the design in all respects is conservative this result is acceptable. The case temperatures of all the major semiconductors was also measured and found to be acceptable for the load of 75 A .

The converter waveforms were recorded using a Tektronix 2232 storage oscilloscope linked to a plotter. Only voltage waveforms could be obtained. The reason is that to obtain this measurement current shunts or CT's have to be inserted, the output voltage from these are very low and the high EMI environment causes excessive disturbance of the measurement.

Figure 4.17 shows the IGBT collector emitter voltage for a load current of 40 A at a bus voltage of 566 V . Attention is drawn to the following points:

```
Turn-off dV/dt of approx. 750 V/ }\mu\textrm{S}\mathrm{ (A to C)
Peak overshoot of 150V (at C)
Voltage fall time of 200nS (at D)
Turn-on tail, 35V to 0 over 0.3\mu\textrm{S}(\mathrm{ at E)}
```

The same waveform (except inverted) for a load of 75 A and a bus voltage of 585 V is presented in Figure 4.18. Notice the increase in turn-off $\mathrm{dV} / \mathrm{dt}$ to $1500 \mathrm{~V} / \mu \mathrm{S}$. The Freewheel diode anode cathode voltage waveform (two series diodes) for a load current of 60 A and a bus voltage of 560 V is shown in Figure 4.19. Attention is drawn to the peak reverse voltage of 634 V . This would not be expected to rise to 750 V at full load and maximum bus voltage.

Figure 4.20 shows the anode cathode voltage (single diode) of diode $D_{s}$ and the IGBT collector emitter voltage for a load current of 40 A at a bus voltage of 510 V . The following aspects are of interest:

Forward recovery, $94 \mathrm{~V} /$ diode (at A)
Peak reverse voltage of $300 \mathrm{~V} /$ diode (at B)
Resonant reversing period (at C)



Figure 4.18 IGBT Collector Emitter Voltage (200V/div)


Figure 4.19 Freewheel Diode Anode Cathode Voltage (200V/div)

TEKTRONIX 2232


## 5. CONTROLLER OPERATION AND DESIGN

The new converter topology outlined in Chapter Two requires a specialized control system to complete the amplifier. This chapter is devoted to the operation and design of this control system. The first section gives an overview of the control strategies employed. The major topics include the output and the leg bias control loops and the four phase modulation technique with frequency dropping to extend the dynamic range. The basic hardware implementation philosophy is also briefly discussed in the first section.

In subsequent sections the detailed operation of each section of the controller is discussed. These include:
(a) Phase/Ramp Generator
(b) Bias Current Control
(c) Output Current Control Including Frequency Dropping
(d) Current Limiter

Following this, a detailed control systems analysis is presented. Of particular importance is the development of expressions describing the interaction between the output current and the bias current control loops.

### 5.1 Control Strategy

A simplified block diagram of the controller is presented in Figure 5.1. As outlined in Chapter Two there are two primary control loops required for this converter. The first controls the load current by adjustment of the average output voltage via the five level pulse width modulation technique.


Figure 5.1 Amplifier Controller Simplified Block Diagram

The second controls the bias current which flows down each phase leg in order to keep the idle buck converter in conduction. All buck converters must remain in conduction in order for the five level modulation to be achieved. A simplified schematic of the modified bridge inverter is repeated in Figure 5.2.

Assuming that the "AP" converter is supplying the output current $\mathrm{I}_{0}$, the coupling transformer magnetizing current $\mathrm{I}_{\text {ma }}$ must be maintained above $\mathrm{I}_{0} / 2$ for the "AN" converter to maintain conduction. The "AN" chopper is said to be in its idle state. The current being carried by the "AN" chopper during this period is termed the bias current and at any time will be the minimum of the out of the two converter currents. The function of the bias current control loop is to maintain the magnetizing current above $I_{0} / 2$. The magnetizing current can be manipulated by adjustment of the differential volt seconds across the transformer. Forcing an average differential voltage between $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ap}}$ and $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{an}}$ will cause the magnetizing current to increase or decrease depending on the polarity. The magnetizing current can therefore be controlled.

The bias current is the difference between it and $\mathrm{I}_{0} / 2$. In control systems terminology this means that the bias current control loop is "disturbed" by the output current. As discussed in Chapter Two at high rates of change of output current a large differential voltage must be applied to keep the bias current constant. If excessive, this gives rise to high levels of 50 kHz spectral content in the output voltage, which is undesirable. In the ideal five level system the 50 kHz component is completely absent as is seen in Figure 2.10. In the practical implementation of this topology a 50 kHz component must be accepted. However this can be kept to a low level by limiting the bandwidth of the bias current control loop. At higher frequencies the bias current is allowed, to a limited extent, to be disturbed by the output current to avoid excessive differential voltages from being generated. The bias current is raised to avoid discontinuous operation.


Figure 5.2 Amplifier Bridge Inverter

In Chapter Four it was shown that because of constraints imposed by the snubbing system a minimum off and on time was required to be enforced. This causes the difficulty of not being able to obtain the full potential output voltage swing. The average output voltage for the bridge inverter is given by the following:

$$
\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ab}}(\mathrm{avg})=2 \mathrm{E}(2 \mathrm{D}-1) \quad 5.1-1
$$

The minimum on time is $2.5 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ which in a $20 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ period gives a duty ratio of 0.125 . From equation 5.1-1 this results in a minimum output voltage of ( $@ \mathrm{E}=280 \mathrm{~V}$ ) -420 V . Likewise the maximum output voltage is +420 V . This represents an unacceptable restriction on the amplifier's performance. It is overcome by reducing the switching frequency, while maintaining a constant on or off time. In this way the modulator duty cycle is extended to 0.01 to 0.99 . This strategy yields a constant modulator gain over nearly the full duty cycle range.

The frequency dropping function is implemented by a VCO from which all the modulator ramp signals are derived. This will be discussed in further in Section 5.2. The minimum off and on times are enforced just before the drive signals are dispatched to the drive modules so that there is no possibility of violation. The minimum times are generated digitally by counters. These are clocked by a 6 MHz crystal locked signal to ensure their accuracy. The output current controller is a simple proportional plus integral system. This drives a pulse width modulator and VCO via function generators such that frequency dropping commences once the control voltage reaches a level which corresponds to the production of minimum on or off times. The upper VCO frequency is crystal locked to ensure stable operation of the ramp generators.

The amplifier output current is controlled and the input demand is limited.

This means under normal operating conditions an overload condition is not possible. However additional current limiting has been incorporated which will only become operational in abnormal conditions such as a control system or power circuit failure. The current limiting is achieved by independent synchronized hysteresis control on each buck converter. The limit level is set above the normal maximum operating current but still at a safe value.

The control strategy discussed above requires the independent measurement of each buck converters current in addition to the output current. Figure 5.2 shows the circuit location of the five current transducers. The transducers use a hall effect device plus a high gain amplifier followed by a buffer/driver. The bandwidth of the transducer unit is 100 kHz .

The entire controller is constructed on a single printed circuit board with the analog circuitry being implemented using wide bandwidth LF353 operational amplifiers and LM319 high speed comparators. The digital logic is entirely implemented using Philips PAL technology. This has the advantage of greatly reducing the integrated circuit count. Perhaps more importantly PALs give the ability to implement functional blocks in a single package allowing easier circuit development. For example the minimum ON/OFF generator is implemented in a single PAL. This circuit can then be developed and tested independently of the remainder of the controller.

An overview of the controller function blocks showing details of the interconnections is shown in Figure 5.3. Each major signal has been labeled with an abbreviated name which is descriptive of its function. For example, the signal "APpwm" is the "AP" converters PWM signal. Reference will be made to these signals in the sections following.


Figure 5.3 Controller System Overview

### 5.2 Phase/Ramp Generator Operation

The ramp generator function could not be implemented using standard PWM integrated circuits because of several special requirements:
(a) Frequency dropping function
(b) Four phase ramp signals
(c) Symmetrical ramp signals

Symmetrical ramps are not absolutely essential but yield a significantly improved output spectrum as compared to a fixed sawtooth which is most commonly implemented in switchmode power supply control I.C. The type of ramp used in switchmode supply I.C's makes no difference since the modulation is a DC signal. The symmetrical ramp yields what is known as a trailing and leading edge modulator, the benefits of this is discussed in [1].

As previously outlined the frequency dropping function is implemented to extend the dynamic voltage range of the power circuit. At the minimum on and off times of $2.5 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ and for $\mathrm{a} \pm 5 \mathrm{~V}$ ramp with a $20 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ period the modulating signal will be at +3.75 V or -3.75 V . At these levels, $\mathrm{V}_{\text {master }}$, which is the output current loops input to the modulator, is clamped by a analog circuit utilizing precision rectifiers as illustrated in Figure 5.4. At the same levels the VCO control voltage, $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{fcon}}$, begins to reduce from an initial voltage of 5 V . The signal $\mathrm{V}_{\text {fcon }}$ reduces so that when the control voltage $\mathrm{V}_{\text {con }}$ reaches $\pm 5 \mathrm{~V}$ it will reach zero volts which corresponds to zero frequency. Provision has been made to enable the minimum switching frequency to be set. For the setting shown in Figure $5.4, \mathrm{~V}_{\text {fcon }}$ would be limited at 0.5 V which would result in a minimum switching frequency of 5 kHz and therefore a maximum duty ratio of 0.9875 . In practice it was found that lower limits could be used with no apparent difficulty.


Figure 5.4 Controller Detailed Block Diagram Part " A "

The signal $\mathrm{V}_{\text {master }}$ is combined with signals originating from the two leg bias current controllers to provide the analog input signals $\mathrm{Vap}_{\mathrm{con}}, \mathrm{Van}_{\text {con }}, \mathrm{Vbp}_{\mathrm{con}}$ and $\mathrm{Vbn}_{\text {con }}$ to the four modulators. Figure 5.5 shows the block diagram of the remainder of the controller including the Phase/Ramp Generator and Modulator. The VCO provides a nominal frequency of 200 kHz to the synchronisation generator which uses frequency dividers to obtain the four phase pulse train. A detailed schematic diagram of the phase generator is shown in Figure 5.6.

The design of the VCO is quite novel in that it displays a crystal locked upper frequency. This is a very important feature since any deviation above the nominal frequency of 200 kHz will cause pulse dropping and result in output noise. It was found in practice that relying on a fixed maximum analog voltage to fix the maximum frequency was deficient in this respect. Noise on the $\mathrm{V}_{\text {fcon }}$ causes random dropping of pulses. To overcome this problem two VCO's are employed one is crystal locked at 3.2000 MHz and the other has RC timing such that its output frequency is approximately 3.2000 Mhz with a control voltage of 5 V . By lightly coupling the output of the crystal locked oscillator into the other VCO's timing circuit via resistor $R_{x}$ it will tend to synchronize them together. The reason for this is that the capacitor $C_{x}$ is being charged by an internal current source plus a small current coupled in from the other oscillator. At some voltage across $C_{x} a$ comparator will be triggered. If the natural oscillation frequency of VCO "A" is above that of the crystal locked oscillator the average charging rate will be reduced which will tend to drive it to a lower frequency. The opposite happens if the VCO "A" frequency is low. Hence there is a tendency for the two VCO's to phase lock. When the control voltage is lowered the two will initially stay locked but a point will be reached where the small amount of signal which is coupled into VCO "A" is insufficient, the frequency will deviate and be determined by the control voltage.


Figure 5.5 Controller Detailed Block Diagram Part "B"


Figure 5.6 Phase Generator Schematic Diagram

This introduces a dead zone non-linearity to the control loop. The dead zone must be sufficiently large so as it contains the maximum peak to peak noise on the analog signal. Fortunately because the analog noise is already low the dead zone need only be small ( $5-4.85 \mathrm{~V}$ was used). Since the dead zone non-linearity, in classical control systems terms, acts to reduce the gain and does not cause any phase shift there is no effect on the loop stability. In practice for the small dead zone introduced there is no apparent effect on the the closed loop control performance. The output of the VCO "A" is nominally 3.2000 Mhz , this is divided down by a binary counter to give $f_{\text {out }}=200.0 \mathrm{kHz}$ signal. The $f_{\text {out }}$ signal is fed to the synchronisation generator which gives the four phase output, $\mathrm{AP}_{\text {syn }}, \mathrm{AN}_{\text {syn }}$, $\mathrm{BP}_{\text {syn }}$ and $\mathrm{BN}_{\text {syn. }}$. These signals are used to trigger the ramp generator cycles. The synchronisation generator logic is implemented in a PLC42VA12 PAL.

Figure 5.7 describes the ramp generator operation. The ramp generator works in one of two different cycles depending if $\mathrm{V}_{\text {master }}$ is positive (which corresponds to a negative output voltage) or negative. The signal " $P$ " determines which cycle the ramp generator operates in. When " $\mathrm{P}=1$ " the output voltage is positive and the ramp generator works in a RISE, FALL followed by HOLD mode. The reason that the ramp generator is configured this way is that the minimum off time for the PWM signal, which is determined by the 3.75 V clamping level as previously discussed, is allowed to remain constant while the on time is stretched during the hold period. The synchronisation pulse determines when the hold period finishes and the next cycle begins. The logic causes the ramp signal to rise to +5 V at which time the "UP $=1$ " signal triggers the ramp to fall until -5 V is reached where the "DWN $=1$ " signal causes the ramp to go into a hold and the logic waits for the next synchronisation pulse. The frequency of the synchronisation pulses reduces as the VCO frequency reduces. During the negative output voltage when " $\mathrm{P}=0$ " the cycle becomes FALL, RISE and HOLD the ramp waveform is therefore inverted to that of " $\mathrm{P}=1$ ".

This means that the PWM on time is allowed to remain constant while the off time is stretched. Two synchronisation pulses are actually used, when " $\mathrm{P}=1$ " The SYN1 signal is used and the ramp is synchronised on the rising ramp, when " $\mathrm{P}=0$ " the cycle is synchronised on the falling ramp with the SYN2. SYN2 is delayed by half a cycle from SYN1. The SYN2 signals are simply the SYN1 from another phase as shown in Figure 5.6. The use of two synchronisation signals ensures there is minimum disturbance during the transition from " $\mathrm{P}=1$ " to " $\mathrm{P}=0$ " to the five level modulation scheme.

The logic that controls the ramp generator cycle is implemented as a state machine. The state transition diagram shown in Figure 5.7 illustrates the operation described above diagrammatically. The two state machines for one leg are implemented in a single PLC42VA12 PAL. The next state logic expressions are also displayed in Figure 5.6.

The analog ramps are generated by converting the digital state to an appropriate analog voltage which is fed to an inverting integrator as illustrated in Figure 5.8. During the rise phase the integrator is presented with -5 V and during the fall phase +5 V . In the following discussion the "AP" converter control is used as an example. The digital signals $/ \mathrm{AP}_{\text {rise }}$ and $/ \mathrm{AP}_{\text {fall }}$ drive an Op -amp circuit via mosfets $\mathrm{V}_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ which provides the desired analog voltages. With $V_{1}$ turned on and $V_{2}$ off the circuit becomes a non-inverting amplifier with a gain of unity with a 5.00 V input voltage. This corresponds to the falling phase. With $\mathrm{V}_{2}$ turned on and $\mathrm{V}_{1}$ turned off the circuit becomes an inverting amplifier of unity gain with a 5.00 V input. This corresponds to the rising phase. The 5.00 V input voltage is generated from a precision reference. When both $\mathrm{V}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{V}_{2}$ are switched on the integrator input is zero volts and the HOLD period is entered. The integrator ramp times are controlled by an RC time constant. The capacitor is a high accuracy low drift type. The resistors are adjusted to make the ramp up time plus the ramp down time be as close to the synchronisation pulse period, when not frequency dropping, as possible.


Figure 5.7 Phase Generator Logic Operation

## UP/DWN DETECTOR



Figure 5.8 Ramp Generator Analog Operation

It is impossible to make this adjustment perfect since any ramp period variations will cause synchronisation pulses to be missed resulting in pulse dropping. This means the state machine will always enter the hold period for a small period, in practice this is adjusted down to approximately $0.5 \mu \mathrm{~S}$. The adverse effect of this is that during the " $\mathrm{P}=1$ " to " $\mathrm{P}=0$ " transition or visa-versa there will be a $0.5 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ jump in the pulsewidth which represents a 28 V jump in output voltage. The effect of this is to introduce a slight distortion in the output, this however has not posed a serious problem since it is suppressed by the overall amplifier negative feedback. Also the hysteresis which is applied in the detection of " P " is wide being $\pm 2 \mathrm{~V}$ so that at low signal levels there is no change in "P" and therefore no duty cycle jump. The upper and lower limits of the integrator output are detected by comparators which generate the $\mathrm{AP}_{\mathrm{up}}$ and $\mathrm{AP}_{\mathrm{dwn}}$ signals. These feedback to the phase generator logic to initiate the next part of the cycle. The ramp limits are set at $\pm 5 \mathrm{~V}$. Example waveforms for the "AP" converter for the "P=1" case are shown in Figure 5.8.

The four phase shifted ramp signals feed the pulse width modulator comparators together with the appropriate analog control signal for each phase. The PWM output is fed to flip flops which are implemented to prevent switching chatter from occurring. The flip flops are the reset/set(reset dominant) type. These are implemented as part of the V/I auctioning subcircuit PALs. They also have "RESET OK" and "SET OK" gates. During the rising ramp the flip flops are allowed to reset but a set is inhibited. During the falling ramp a set is allowed and the reset is inhibited. The fall and rise signals from the phase generator are used to gate the flip flops. This system prevents multiple switching or chatter that often occurs in switch mode equipment as a result of noise originating from the power circuits.

It should be noted that the "AN" PWM signal is inverted before being delivered to the drivers. The reason for this is to produce positive output voltage the "AN" converters IGBT must be switched off and the current allowed to flow in the freewheel diode. Also the "BP" and "BN" choppers are driven in the inverse manner to the "AP" and "AN" choppers so as to produce the inverse average voltage at the coupling transformer center tap, that is the two legs are driven differentially to produce the resultant output voltage.

### 5.3 Bias Current Control Operation

The bias current as discussed earlier is the minimum of the two converter currents for one phase leg. In terms of an average current expression it is given by the following:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{bias}}(\mathrm{t})=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{ap}}(\mathrm{t})+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{an}}(\mathrm{t})-\mathrm{abs}\left[\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{ap}}(\mathrm{t})-\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{an}}(\mathrm{t})\right]}{2}
$$

An analog circuit was developed to achieve this expression. This is shown in Figure 5.4. When $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{ap}}>\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{an}}$ the output becomes:

$$
\begin{align*}
& V_{\text {bias }}(t)=\left[-\left(I_{a p}(t)-I_{a n}(t)\right)+I_{a n}\right] \times 2-\left[I_{a n}(t)-I_{a p}(t)\right] \times 2 \\
& V_{\text {bias }}(t)=-2 I_{a p}(t)+4 I_{a n}(t)+-2 I_{a n}(t)+2 I_{a p}(t) \\
& V_{\text {bias }}(t)=2 I_{a n}(t)=2 I_{\text {bias }}(t)
\end{align*}
$$

When $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{ap}}<\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{an}}$ the output becomes:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{bias}}(\mathrm{t})=\left[\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{an}} \times 2\right]-\left[\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{an}}-\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{ap}}\right] \times 2 \\
& \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{bias}}(\mathrm{t})=2 \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{ap}}(\mathrm{t})=2 \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{bias}}(\mathrm{t})
\end{align*}
$$

So this analog system has an output two times the minimum of the two currents. The circuit implementation of this consists of three op-amps, one configured as a precision rectifier and the other two as subtracting amplifiers.

The bias current is compared with an adjustable setpoint and fed to a proportional controller. It should be noted the " B " leg bias controller error junction is reversed to that of the "A" leg. This is necessary because of the inversion in the drive signals for the " B " leg which is required to produce the differential action as previously explained. The bias current control signal drives the control signals for each converter differentially that is it is added to positive converters control signal and subtracted from the negative converters control signal. For example if more bias current is required in the "A" leg the bias current control signal will increase $\mathrm{V}_{\text {apcon }}$ and decrease $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ancon }}$ which results in a positive average voltage $\left(\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ap}}-\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{an}}\right)$ across the magnetizing inductance.

The bias current control loop gain is set by adjustment of $\mathrm{K}_{\mathrm{b}}$ which in practice is simply done by changing a resistor value. The selection of $\mathrm{K}_{\mathrm{b}}$ will be discussed in Section 5.7.

### 5.4 Output Current Control Operation

The output current control action is proportional plus integral as shown in Figure 5.4. The integral term is clamped at $\pm 5 \mathrm{~V}$ which corresponds to the dynamic limit for the pulse width modulator. This minimises the overshoot during transients where the system saturates. Without clamping the system can suffer from "wind-up reset" type behavior where the integral term increases excessively during a transient due to saturation some where in the system. This causes a large overshoot during the wind-up stage and a less but still large undershoot during the reset period. The $\mathrm{P}+\mathrm{I}$ control is implemented using a single $\mathrm{Op}-\mathrm{amp}$ with zener diode clamping across the integration capacitor.

The current demand is passed through a limiting amplifier which sets the maximum output current in either direction. This is normally set at $\pm 4 \mathrm{~V}$ which corresponds to $\pm 80 \mathrm{~A}$. With 20 A of Bias current this would mean that two converters would carry 100A which corresponds to their maximum continuous rating. Providing that the control system is functioning correctly the maximum continuous rating will never be exceeded.

The main control signal $\mathrm{V}_{\text {con }}$ is fed through a specialized limiter circuit to obtain $\mathrm{V}_{\text {master }}$ and also through a function generator to give the frequency control signal $\mathrm{V}_{\text {fcon }}$ as presented in Figure 5.4. The function generator and limiter is actually an integrated system. This is necessary to ensure that $\mathrm{V}_{\text {fcon }}$ commences to be reduced at precisely the same level $\mathrm{V}_{\text {master }}$ is clamped. If $0<\mathrm{V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})<3.75 \mathrm{~V}(3.75 \mathrm{~V}$ corresponds to 0.875 duty ratio):

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{V}_{\text {master }}(\mathrm{t})=-\mathrm{V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t}) \\
& \mathrm{V}_{\text {fcon }}=5 \mathrm{~V} \\
& \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}=50 \mathrm{kHz}
\end{aligned}
$$

If $-3.75<\mathrm{V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})<3.75 \mathrm{~V}$ :

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{V}_{\text {master }}(\mathrm{t})=\left(\mathrm{V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})-3.75\right)-\mathrm{V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})=-3.75 \mathrm{~V} \\
& \mathrm{~V}_{\text {fcon }}(\mathrm{t})=-\left(\mathrm{V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})-3.75\right) \times 4+5 \\
& \quad=4\left(5-\mathrm{V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})\right) \mathrm{V} \\
& \\
& \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}=40.0\left(5-\mathrm{V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})\right) \mathrm{kHz}
\end{aligned}
$$

If $\mathrm{V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})>4.875 \mathrm{~V}$

$$
\mathrm{V}_{\text {master }}(\mathrm{t})=-3.75 \mathrm{~V}
$$

$$
\mathrm{V}_{\text {fcon }}(\mathrm{t})=0.5 \mathrm{~V}
$$

$$
\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}=5.0 \mathrm{kHz}
$$

The 5 kHz switching frequency is the minimum in this case. The same procedure applies for $-4.875<\mathrm{V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})<0$. The duty ratio is given by:

$$
D=\frac{T_{o n}}{T_{o n}+T_{o f f}}=1-\frac{T_{o f f}}{T_{s}}
$$

The off time for $\mathrm{V}_{\text {con }}>3.75 \mathrm{~V}$ during frequency dropping is fixed at $2.5 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ and the period $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{s}}$ is given by:

$$
\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{s}}(\mathrm{t})=\frac{1}{0.04\left(5-\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{con}}(\mathrm{t})\right)} \mu \mathrm{S}
$$

Therefore during frequency dropping the transfer function from control voltage to duty ratio becomes:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{D}(\mathrm{t})=1-2.5 \times 0.04\left(5-\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{con}}(\mathrm{t})\right) \\
& \mathrm{D}(\mathrm{t})=0.1 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{con}}(\mathrm{t})+0.5
\end{aligned}
$$

The modulator transfer function for each segment can be similarly found:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& -4.875<\mathrm{V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})<-3.75 \mathrm{D}(\mathrm{t})=0.1 \mathrm{~V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})+0.5 \text { (frequency dropping) } \\
& -3.75<\mathrm{V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})<0 \\
& \mathrm{D}(\mathrm{t})=0.1 \mathrm{~V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})+0.5 \\
& 0<\mathrm{V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})<3.75 \\
& \mathrm{D}(\mathrm{t})=0.1 \mathrm{~V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})+0.5 \\
& 3.75<\mathrm{V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})<4.875 \\
& \mathrm{D}(\mathrm{t})=0.1 \mathrm{~V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})+0.5 \text { (frequency dropping) }
\end{aligned}
$$

Using the frequency dropping strategy yields a constant relationship throughout the entire duty cycle range. The minimum frequency limit can be set by changing resistor values. The value selected was 5 kHz though this is arbitrary. In practice frequencies down to 1 kHz have been found to work quite satisfactory, however the VCO starts to become non-linear in this range. The important advantages of the frequency dropping scheme over the traditional pulse dropping system commonly found in variable speed motor drives is that first the relationship between converter output and control voltage remains linear.

For this topology it is important that the five level modulation is preserved throughout the duty cycle range. The low frequency operation does not present any control system stability problems. The reason for this is, it is excessive switching ripple that causes the control system to behave abnormally. The ripple is determined by the volt-second area of the minimum on or off pulses, which remains constant. The ripple does not increase during frequency dropping.

Figure 5.9 shows an actual oscillograph trace taken from the scale model when operating in the frequency dropping mode. The $\mathrm{V}_{\text {fcon }}$ signal on a scale of $2 \mathrm{~V} / \mathrm{div}$ and the output current on a scale of $4 \mathrm{~A} /$ div, which is equivalent to $40 \mathrm{~A} / \mathrm{div}$ on the full scale unit, are shown. A 1 kHz modulating signal is used. The $\mathrm{V}_{\text {fcon }}$ signal normally rests at 5 V and reduces when required by the controller. In this case $V_{\text {fcon }}$ reduces to its lower limit of 0.5 V corresponding to $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}=5 \mathrm{kHz}$. Notice that the frequency minimum and hence the output voltage maximum occurs before the current maximum, This simply reflects the lagging power factor of the load. Even though the modulator is being driven through its full range with maximum frequency dropping the output current waveshape is still of high quality. This verifies the high standard of performance that this new strategy offers.

In Figure 5.10 the "AP" converter output voltage on a scale of $20 \mathrm{~V} /$ div and the output current on a scale of $4 \mathrm{~A} / \mathrm{div}$ are shown for a 1 kHz modulating signal. The frequency dropping period is clearly indicated by the pulse stretching in the PWM. Note the good pulse regularity and the absence of distortion in the output current waveform during the frequency dropping period.

TEKTRONIX 2こ32


## TEKTRONIX 2232



### 5.5 Current Limiter Operation

Under normal conditions the output is naturally current limited, however failure of the controller, transducers or the power circuit may cause an elevation in converter currents and possible catastrophic failure. To reduce the probability of this occurring additional hysteresis type current limiting has been implemented as shown in Figure 5.5.

The output current from each converter is compared against a high and a low level reference. If the current exceeds the high level a R/S flip flop is reset which turns the appropriate IGBT off. Since flywheeling now occurs the current will decrease. Once the current reduces below the low level setpoint the flip flop will be set and therefore the IGBT is turned back on. The set signal is gated by either a FALL or RISE logic signal from the phase generator so that the leading edge generated by the current limiter is always synchronized with a leading edge generated by the pulse width modulator. The use of this strategy yields the smoothest possible operation of the current limit and prevents the possibility of sustained high frequency switching. The high limit setpoint should be set at 110 A and the low level limit setpoint should be set at 90A. This means under hysteresis control the average converter current will be limited to 100A. In normal operation the high limit should never be exceeded. The current limiter protects the converter against faults such as failure of a current transducer, failure of a buck converter or malfunction of the main or bias control loops.

Shown in Figure 5.11 is an actual oscillograph trace of the output for the scale model under control of the current limiter. In this case the current limiter setpoints have deliberately been set lower than the normal current demand which is also shown. The operation of the "AP" current limiter on the scale model with the "AN" IGBT short circuited was also tested and found to protect the entire unit from further damage.

TEKTRONIX 2232


Trace 2 - Actual Output Current (4A/div)

### 5.6 Control Systems Design

In this section the parameter settings for the the output and bias current control loops will be discussed. A control systems block diagram is shown in Figure 5.12. In this application the switching ripple is sufficiently small to allow state space averaging to be applied. As a result classical analysis is applicable. First consider the transfer function for the modulator and bridge combination. The pulsewidth modulators use naturally sampled with symmetrical ramps. This means that from the classical control point of view they do not introduce any phase shift in the system, [44]. From Section 5.4 it was shown that the modulator transfer function is:

$$
\mathrm{D}(\mathrm{t})=0.1 \mathrm{~V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})+0.5
$$

The average voltage at the coupling transformer center tap is:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \text { "A" LEG: } \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{a}}(\mathrm{t})=\frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ap}}(\mathrm{t})+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{an}}(\mathrm{t})}{2} \\
& \text { "B" LEG: } \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{b}}(\mathrm{t})=\frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{bp}}(\mathrm{t})+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{bn}}(\mathrm{t})}{2}
\end{align*}
$$

Therefore the output voltage will be:

$$
\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}(\mathrm{t})=\frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ap}}(\mathrm{t})+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{an}}(\mathrm{t})}{2}-\frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{bp}}(\mathrm{t})+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{bn}}(\mathrm{t})}{2} \quad 5.5-4
$$

From equation 5.5-1:

$$
\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{ap}}(\mathrm{t})=0.1 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{apcon}}(\mathrm{t})+0.5
$$



Figure 5.12 Amplifier Control Systems Block Diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{an}}(\mathrm{t})=0.1 \mathrm{~V}_{\text {ancon }}(\mathrm{t})+0.5 & 5.5-6 \\
\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{bp}}(\mathrm{t})=0.1 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{bpcon}}(\mathrm{t})+0.5 & 5.5-7 \\
\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{bn}}(\mathrm{t})=0.1 \mathrm{~V}_{\text {bncon }}(\mathrm{t})+0.5 & 5.5-8
\end{array}
$$

The converter transfer function is:

$$
\mathrm{V}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{E}[2 \mathrm{D}(\mathrm{t})-1]
$$

Therefore:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ap}}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{E}\left[2\left(0.1 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{apcon}}(\mathrm{t})+0.5\right)-1\right] \\
&=0.2 \mathrm{E} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{apcon}}(\mathrm{t}) \\
& \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{an}}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{E}\left[2\left(0.1 \mathrm{~V}_{\text {ancon }}(\mathrm{t})+0.5\right)-1\right] \\
&=0.2 \mathrm{E} \mathrm{~V}_{\text {ancon }}(\mathrm{t}) \\
& \\
& \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{bp}}(\mathrm{t})=-\mathrm{E}\left[2\left(0.1 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{bpcon}}(\mathrm{t})+0.5\right)-1\right] \\
&=-0.2 \mathrm{E} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{bpcon}}(\mathrm{t}) \\
& \\
& \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{bn}}(\mathrm{t})=-\mathrm{E}\left[2\left(0.1 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{bncon}}(\mathrm{t})+0.5\right)-1\right] \\
&=-0.2 \mathrm{E} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{bncon}}(\mathrm{t})
\end{align*}
$$

The "BP" and "BN" converters have inverted logic drives which effectively inverts the output voltage, this produces the differential action between phase legs.

The modulator control voltages are a function of both $\mathrm{V}_{\text {master }}(\mathrm{t})$ and hence $\mathrm{V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})$ and $\mathrm{Va}_{\text {bias }}(\mathrm{t})$ or $\mathrm{Vb}_{\text {bias }}(\mathrm{t})$ :

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
V_{\text {apcon }}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})+\mathrm{Va}_{\text {bias }}(\mathrm{t}) & 5.5-14 \\
V_{\text {ancon }}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})-\mathrm{Va}_{\text {bias }}(\mathrm{t}) & 5.5-15 \\
V_{\text {bpcon }}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})+\mathrm{Vb}_{\text {bias }}(\mathrm{t}) & 5.5-16 \\
V_{\text {bncon }}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})-\mathrm{Vb}_{\text {bias }}(\mathrm{t}) & 5.5-17
\end{array}
$$

Therefore the output voltage will be given by:

$$
\begin{align*}
V_{0}(\mathrm{t}) & =\frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ap}}(\mathrm{t})+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{an}}(\mathrm{t})}{2}-\frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{bp}}(\mathrm{t})+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{bn}}(\mathrm{t})}{2} \\
\mathrm{~V}_{0}(\mathrm{t}) & =0.2 \mathrm{E}\left[\frac{\mathrm{~V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})+\mathrm{Va}_{\mathrm{bias}}(\mathrm{t})+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{con}}(\mathrm{t})-\mathrm{Va}_{\mathrm{bias}}(\mathrm{t})}{2}\right] \\
& +0.2 \mathrm{E}\left[\frac{\mathrm{~V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})+\mathrm{Vb}_{\mathrm{bias}}(\mathrm{t})+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{con}}(\mathrm{t})-\mathrm{Vb}_{\mathrm{bias}}(\mathrm{t})}{2}\right] \\
\mathrm{V}_{0}(\mathrm{t}) & =0.4 \mathrm{E} \mathrm{~V} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{con}}(\mathrm{t})=\frac{2}{5} E \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{con}}(\mathrm{t})
\end{align*}
$$

Notice that because of the method of implementation the bias current control term cancels out. This means that the main control loop works independently of the bias control loop. To analyze the bias current control loop it is necessary to determine the transfer function relating $\mathrm{Vb}_{\text {bias }}(\mathrm{t})$ to the differential voltage across the coupling transformer $\Delta \mathrm{V}(\mathrm{t})$.

The differential voltage across the coupling transformer is given by:

$$
\Delta \mathrm{V}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ap}}(\mathrm{t})-\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{an}}(\mathrm{t})
$$

From equations 5.5-10 to 5.5-17:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \Delta \mathrm{V}(\mathrm{t})=0.2 \mathrm{E}\left(\mathrm{~V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})+\mathrm{Va}_{\text {bias }}(\mathrm{t})-\left(\mathrm{V}_{\text {con }}(\mathrm{t})-\mathrm{Va}_{\text {bias }}(\mathrm{t})\right)\right) \\
& \Delta \mathrm{V}(\mathrm{t})=0.4 \mathrm{Va}_{\text {bias }}(\mathrm{t})=\frac{2}{5} \mathrm{Va}_{\text {bias }}(\mathrm{t})
\end{aligned}
$$

The coupling transformer is modeled by recognizing that the the differential voltage is applied across the magnetising inductance $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{m}}$ resulting in a magnetising current $I_{m a}(t)$. The transfer function is therefore:

$$
\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{ma}}(\mathrm{~s})}{\Delta \mathrm{V}(\mathrm{~s})}=\frac{1}{\mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{m}}(\mathrm{~s})}
$$

The magnetising current adds with $\mathrm{I}_{0}(\mathrm{t}) / 2$ to give $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{ap}}(\mathrm{t})$ and $\mathrm{I}_{0}(\mathrm{t}) / 2$ is subtracted to give $I_{a n}$. As previously mentioned $I_{0}(t) / 2$ acts as a disturbing influence on the bias current control loop. Two Hall effect current transducers measure each current and the bias current is derived from these by taking the minimum. Because of the circuit implementation the minimum multiplied by two is actually generated. The current transducer has a sensitivity of $20 \mathrm{~A} / \mathrm{V}$ and a bandwidth 100 kHz , therefore the transfer function will be:

$$
\frac{\mathrm{V}_{\text {trans }}(\mathrm{s})}{\mathrm{I}_{\text {trans }}(\mathrm{s})}=\frac{0.05}{1+1.6 \times 10^{-6} \mathrm{~s}}
$$

The output current transducer is of the same type. The Proportional plus Integral output current controller implemented is shown in Figure 5.12. The transfer function for the PI controller will be:

$$
\frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{con}}(\mathrm{~s})}{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{err}}(\mathrm{~s})}=\mathrm{K}_{\mathrm{p}}\left[1+\frac{\mathrm{K}_{\mathrm{i}}}{\mathrm{~s}}\right]=\mathrm{K}_{\mathrm{p}}\left[\frac{\mathrm{~s}+\mathrm{K}_{\mathrm{i}}}{\mathrm{~s}}\right]
$$

This completes the control systems model as presented in Figure 5.12. The bias control analysis will now be considered. Figure 5.13 parts A,B and C shows how the bias current control loop can be simplified. First in Chapter Two (equation 2.3-11) it was shown that the magnetising current is disturbed by the modulus of $\mathrm{I}_{0}(\mathrm{t}) / 2$, that is:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{bias}}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{m}}(\mathrm{t})-\left|\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{o}}(\mathrm{t})}{2}\right|
$$

The feedback transducer plus the minimum block is replaced by a constant gain block of value 0.1. This valid since as will be shown the bandwidth of this loop is more than a decade less than the feedback pole frequency and so its effect on the performance of the loop is very minor.

It is the effect of the output disturbance on the bias current which is of interest to us, so a rearrangement is done to express the bias current in relation to the disturbance. The simplified block diagram of Figure 5.13 (B) is valid under steady state conditions which is quite acceptable for this analysis. At steady state the bias current is equal to the set point current plus the disturbing influence of the output current. A further simplification in Figure 5.11(C) shows that the bias current is disturbed by a filtered version of the rate of change of $\left|\mathrm{I}_{0}(\mathrm{t}) / 2\right|$.

B.

C.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { - 학|- }-\frac{5}{6} \times \text { 困 } \\
& \tau=\frac{1}{\mathrm{Cn}} \underset{\text { Set }}{\text { Bias }}
\end{aligned}
$$



Figure 5.13 Bias Current Control Loop Operation

In the steady state frequency domain the following expression can be written:

$$
\begin{gather*}
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{bias}}(\mathrm{j} \omega)=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{set}}(\mathrm{j} \omega)+\left[-\left|\frac{\mathrm{I}_{0}}{2}\right|(\mathrm{j} \omega)\right] \frac{\mathrm{j} \omega}{\mathrm{j} \omega+\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{n}}} \\
\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{n}}=\frac{2 E \mathrm{~K}_{\mathrm{b}}}{50 \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{m}}}
\end{gather*}
$$

At low frequencies $\left(\omega<C_{n} / 10\right)$ the influence of the disturbance is small. At $\omega>$ $C_{n}$ the disturbance approaches its maximum level of $\left|I_{0} / 2\right|$. As explained in Section 5.1 and also in Chapter Two, use of a wide bandwidth will improve the attenuation of the disturbance at higher frequencies. However the resulting high coupling transformer differential voltages cause a high level 50 kHz spectral component to be generated. Therefore the philosophy adopted is to set the bandwidth at the minimum level possible. The conflicting factor is this is that as the disturbance magnitude becomes larger eventually the idle converters will be forced out of conduction, causing a breakdown in the five level waveform. Therefore a method of calculating the disturbance magnitude for sine wave modulation is desirable. The required relationship will now be derived.

It will be assumed that the output current is sinusoidal with a peak value of $I_{p}$ and therefore will be given by:

$$
I_{o}=I_{p} \sin \left(\omega_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{t}\right)
$$

The bias current disturbance will be:

$$
-\left|\frac{\mathrm{I}_{0}(\mathrm{t})}{2}\right|=\frac{-\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{p}}}{2}\left|\sin \left(\omega_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{t}\right)\right|
$$

This can be expressed in the following fourier series expansion:

$$
\left|\frac{\mathrm{I}_{0}(\mathrm{t})}{2}\right|=-\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{p}}}{2}\left[\frac{2}{\pi}-\frac{4}{\pi}\left[\frac{\cos \left(2 \omega_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{t}\right)}{1 \cdot 3}+\frac{\cos \left(4 \omega_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{t}\right)}{3 \cdot 5}+\frac{\cos \left(6 \omega_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{t}\right)}{5 \cdot 7}+\cdots\right]\right]
$$

Because the 4th and higher harmonics are relatively small in magnitude using only the 2nd harmonic gives a close approximation:

$$
-\left|\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{o}}(\mathrm{t})}{2}\right| \approx-\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{p}}}{2}\left[\frac{2}{\pi}-\frac{4}{\pi}\left[\frac{\cos \left(2 \omega_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{t}\right)}{3}\right]\right]
$$

The system of Figure 5.13 will not pass the DC term of equation $5.5-28$ and the 2nd harmonic will be attenuated. The 2nd harmonic term is given by:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{2 \mathrm{nd}}(\mathrm{t})=\frac{2 \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{p}}}{\pi}\left[\frac{\cos \left(2 \omega_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{t}\right)}{3}\right]
$$

The gain and phase of the system at the 2nd harmonic frequency is found from equation $5.5-24$ to be:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{G}_{2 \mathrm{nd}}=\sqrt{2 \omega_{\mathrm{m}}} \begin{array}{l}
4 \omega_{\mathrm{m}}^{2}+\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{n}}^{2} \\
\phi_{2 \mathrm{nd}}=90-\operatorname{Tan}^{-1}\left[\frac{2 \omega_{\mathrm{m}}}{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{n}}}\right]
\end{array} .
\end{align*}
$$

The disturbing current magnitude will therefore be approximated by:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{dist}} \approx \frac{2 \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{p}}}{3 \pi} \times \sqrt{2 \omega_{\mathrm{m}}}
$$

The Bias current will therefore be approximated by:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{bias}}(\mathrm{t}) \approx \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{set}}(\mathrm{t})+\frac{4 \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{p}} \omega_{\mathrm{m}}}{3 \pi} \sqrt{4 \omega_{\mathrm{m}}^{2}+\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{n}}{ }^{2}} \cos \left(2 \omega_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{t}+\phi_{2 \mathrm{nd}}\right)
$$

The minimum converter current will therefore be:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{min}}=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{set}}-\frac{4 \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{p}} \omega_{\mathrm{m}}}{3 \pi} \sqrt{4 \omega_{\mathrm{m}}^{2}+\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{n}}{ }^{2}}
$$

Simulations and trials on the scale model were run using the following parameter values:

$$
\mathrm{E}=280 \mathrm{~V}, \mathrm{~K}_{\mathrm{b}}=0.3, \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{m}}=400 \mu \mathrm{H}
$$

Using these values the corner frequency $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{n}}$ from equation $5.5-25$ will be:

$$
\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{n}}=\frac{2 \mathrm{E} \mathrm{~K}}{\mathrm{~b}} \mathrm{~m} \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{m}} \quad \frac{2 \times 280 \times 0.3}{50 \times 400 \times 10^{-6}}=8400 \mathrm{r} / \mathrm{sec}
$$

A control systems simulation based on the model presented Figure 5.13 was run for an 80 A peak 1 kHz sinusoidal modulating signal. The results are presented in Figure 5.13 (D) of Figure 3. The bias current setpoint was given a value of 30A. The output current the bias current and the resulting converter current are presented. In addition to this the waveform at point " X " in Figure 5.13 (C) is displayed in order to give a conceptual appreciation of how the bias current and hence the converter current obtains its shape. The signal $-\left|\mathrm{I}_{0} / 2\right|$ is differentiated and then passed through a low pass filter. The accuracy of $5.5-34$ will now be tested against the simulation result.

The minimum bias current from equation $5.5-34$ becomes:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{I}_{\min } \approx \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{set}}-\frac{4 \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{p}} \omega_{\mathrm{m}}}{3 \pi} \sqrt{4 \omega_{\mathrm{m}}{ }^{2}+\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{n}}{ }^{2}} \\
& \mathrm{I}_{\min } \approx \mathrm{I}_{\text {set }}-\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{p}} \frac{4 \times 1000 \times 2 \pi}{3 \pi} \sqrt{4 \times(1000 \times 2 \pi)^{2}+8400^{2}} \\
& \mathrm{I}_{\min } \approx \mathrm{I}_{\text {set }}-0.176 \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{p}}
\end{aligned}
$$

For an 80A peak current:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{I}_{\min } \approx \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{set}}-14.1 \mathrm{~A} \\
& \mathrm{I}_{\min } \approx 30-14.1=15.9 \mathrm{~A}
\end{aligned}
$$

The actual simulation shows that the minimum current is 17 A which indicates the approximate formula gives a good result. This is an important formula since it allows a decision to be made on the bias current setpoint and the value of $\mathrm{K}_{\mathrm{b}}$. For frequencies above 1 kHz ( $6283 \mathrm{rads} / \mathrm{sec}$ ) $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{min}}$ increases only weakly with increasing $\omega_{\mathrm{m}}$ since this is near the corner frequency of $8400 \mathrm{rads} / \mathrm{sec}$. Therefore lowering the bias current set point to 20 A would not present a problem. This would mean that the minimum converter current would be 5.9 A at 1 kHz and would rise to 20 A at low frequencies. Also the peak converter current is at its highest at low frequencies and will be 100 A with a bias current setpoint of 20 A . The power circuit has been designed to continuously supply 100A.

To complete the analysis the stability of the bias current control loop must be considered.

The forward path transfer function is given by:

$$
\mathrm{G}(\mathrm{~S})=\frac{2 \mathrm{E} \mathrm{~K}_{\mathrm{b}}}{5 \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{m}}} \frac{1}{\mathrm{~s}}
$$

The feedback transducer cascaded with the circuit that derives the bias current has the following transfer function:

$$
H(s)=\frac{6.25 \times 10^{4}}{\left(s+6.25 \times 10^{5}\right)}
$$

Therefore the open loop transfer function will be:

$$
\mathrm{GH}(\mathrm{~s})=\frac{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{n}}}{\mathrm{~s}} \times \frac{6.25 \times 10^{5}}{\left(\mathrm{~s}+6.25 \times 10^{5}\right)}
$$

For the parameter settings already presented:

$$
\mathrm{GH}(\mathrm{~s})=\frac{8400}{\mathrm{~s}} \times \frac{6.25 \times 10^{5}}{\left(\mathrm{~s}+6.25 \times 10^{5}\right)}
$$

Figure 5.14 shows a bode diagram for this system. There are two aspects of interest, first the phase margin and secondly the influence of switching ripple in the system. The phase margin is $90^{\circ}$ and the closed loop response is virtually first order since the feedback pole occurs at a low open loop frequency. So from a stability point of view the proposed settings are excellent. The switching ripple frequency in this loop at 50 kHz from Chapter Two has a peak to peak level of $8.4 \mathrm{~A} @ \mathrm{E}=$ $280 \mathrm{~V} ; \mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{m}}=400 \mu \mathrm{H}$. The ripple current is superimposed on the magnetising current and hence also on the bias current. After passing through the transducers it becomes a $0.76 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{p}-\mathrm{p}}$ ripple. Since $\mathrm{K}_{\mathrm{b}}$ is 0.3 the ripple level at the input to the modulator is 227 mV p-p.


Figure 5.14 Bias Current Control Loop Open Bode Plot

The average rate of rise of ripple voltage will be given by:

$$
\frac{\mathrm{dV}_{\mathrm{r}}}{\mathrm{dt}}=\frac{2 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{p}-\mathrm{p}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{s}}}=\frac{2 \times 0.227}{20}=22.7 \mathrm{mV} / \mu \mathrm{S}
$$

The $\mathrm{dV} / \mathrm{dt}$ for the ramps is $1 \mathrm{~V} / \mu \mathrm{S}$, so the ripple rate is more than an order of magnitude less than the ramp rate. An order of magnitude is considered necessary to ensure that the modulator behaves as a "classical" gain block. The value of $\mathrm{K}_{\mathrm{b}}$ could be increased by four times without any effect on the stability of the loop in relation to the switching ripple or the phase margin.

As previously pointed out the unwanted 50 kHz output current spectral component will become a problem at higher modulating frequencies. As will be shown in Chapter Six, where the scale model test results are presented, the 50 kHz component is acceptably low for the parameter settings used in the above analysis. Since from all other aspects these parameters are acceptable they will be adopted in the full power unit. The only difference is that because of practical constraints the value of $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{m}}$ will be $325 \mu \mathrm{H}$ rather than $400 \mu \mathrm{H}$, this however from a control systems aspect will have negligible effect.

The main control loop has three sections in its forward path transfer function, the P +I controller, the modulator/buck converter and the load. The load represents a variable quantity and as a result the control system performance will also vary. The relative and absolute stability of the system is dictated by the closed loop pole/zero positioning in the complex plane. The forward path transfer function is given by:

$$
\begin{align*}
& G(s)=K_{p} \times \frac{s+K_{i}}{s} \times \frac{2}{5} E \times \frac{a}{s+a} \times \frac{1}{R} \\
& a=\frac{R}{L} \\
& L-\text { Total load inductance; } R-\text { Load resistance }
\end{align*}
$$

The feedback path transfer function is given by:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{H}(\mathrm{~s})=\frac{1}{20} \frac{\mathrm{~b}}{\mathrm{~s}+\mathrm{b}} \\
& \mathrm{~b}=6.25 \times 10^{5}
\end{align*}
$$

The closed loop transfer function will be given by:

$$
\frac{\mathrm{C}(\mathrm{~s})}{\mathrm{R}(\mathrm{~s})}=\frac{\mathrm{G}(\mathrm{~s})}{1+\mathrm{G}(\mathrm{~s}) \mathrm{H}(\mathrm{~s})}
$$

It is proposed to use the following parameter settings:

$$
\mathrm{K}_{\mathrm{p}}=10, \mathrm{~K}_{\mathrm{i}}=1 \times 10^{4}
$$

The analysis will be done assuming that E is 280 V . The closed loop transfer function from equations $5.5-39,5.5-40$ and $5.5-41$ can be shown to be:
$\frac{C(s)}{R(s)}=\frac{40 E K_{p a}\left(s+K_{i}\right)(s+b)}{100 R s^{3}+100 R(a+b) s^{2}+\left(100 R a b+2 E K_{p} b\right) s+2 E K_{p} K_{i} a b}$

Using the parameter settings above and a range of loads the pole/zero positions were calculated using "MATLAB", [33], and are displayed on the complex plane in Figures 5.15 and 5.16 . The system is dominated by a complex pair of poles and a real zero at $6.25 \times 10^{5} \mathrm{rads} / \mathrm{sec}$. The zero originates from the open loop feedback pole. There is also a pole zero pair at around $1 \times 10^{4} \mathrm{rads} / \mathrm{sec}$ but because these are relatively close for the load range considered they only have a small effect on the response. The behavior of the pole/zero pair with load changes is presented in Figure 5.16.


Figure 5.15 Output Current Control Loop Pole/Zero Map, Part " $\mathrm{A}^{\prime}$


Figure 5.16 Output Current Control Loop Pole/Zero Map , Part "B"

The closed loop zero at $1 \times 10^{4}$ rads $/ \mathrm{sec}$ originates from the $\mathrm{P}+\mathrm{I}$ controller and the pole changes position as the load changes. The resistance set to zero ohms is as would be expected the worst case condition from a stability aspect. This corresponds to an output short circuit. The choice of the output inductor dictates the load inductance and hence the relative stability in the short circuit case. The output inductor has been selected to be $250 \mu \mathrm{H}$ which yields a second order system damping ratio of 0.83 . The step input overshoot can be calculated for the second order system plus a zero. Curves for such systems are presented in, [45]. The ratio of the zero to the real part of the complex pair is two and for a damping ratio of 0.83 the step input overshoot will be approximately $1.5 \%$.

As previously mentioned this neglects the effect of the closed loop pole/zero pair at $1 \times 10^{4} \mathrm{rads} / \mathrm{sec}$. Under short circuit conditions the effect of the pole zero pair should be considered. At $\mathrm{R}=0 \Omega$ and $\mathrm{L}=250 \mu \mathrm{H}$ the pole frequency is $10480 \mathrm{rads} / \mathrm{sec}$. The time domain unit step input response of the pole/zero pair can be shown to be given by the following, [46]:

$$
\mathrm{Y}(\mathrm{t})=1+\left(\frac{\mathrm{P}}{\mathrm{Z}}-1\right) \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{pt}}
$$

For $\mathrm{P}=10480$ and $\mathrm{Z}=10000$ the initial value will be:

$$
Y(0)=1+\left(\frac{10480}{10000}-1\right)=1.048
$$

The output is lifted $4.8 \%$ and the decay time constant ( $1 / \mathrm{p}$ ) will be $95 \mu \mathrm{~S}$. Compared with the complex pairs time constant of $3.25 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ this is very long. The complex pair plus zero and the pole/zero pair can be considered as two cascaded blocks. It can be seen that if a unit step is applied to the pole/zero pair the initial output will step to 1.048 which will decay with a time constant of $95 \mu \mathrm{~S}$ back to unity.

Because the time constant of the complex pair is short compared with this the peak overshoot will be lifted by 1.048 times. The resulting peak will therefore be:

$$
\text { O.S. } \approx 1.048 \times 1.015=1.064 \text { or } 6.4 \%
$$

This was verified using "MATLAB" to simulate the output response from the system described by equation $5.5-42$ for the load of $\mathrm{R}=0 \Omega$; $\mathrm{L}=250 \mu \mathrm{H}$ for a unit step input. Loads of $\mathrm{R}=5 \Omega ; \mathrm{L}=250 \mu \mathrm{H}$ and $\mathrm{R}=5 \Omega ; \mathrm{L}=500 \mu \mathrm{H}$ were also simulated and are presented in Figure 5.17. The effect of the low frequency pole/zero pair is clearly evident from the long time constant characteristic response. For the case of $\mathrm{R}=5$; $\mathrm{L}=250 \mu \mathrm{H}$ because the pole is lower in frequency than the zero the output step undershoots the demand.

From the pole zero map it can also be seen that the system response for purely resistive loads in the expected operating range ( $0 \Omega-30 \Omega$ ) is relatively constant. With increasing load inductance the system becomes more damped as the complex pair of poles migrate towards the real axis. At higher load inductances the system becomes overdamped. The open loop bode plots are presented in Figure 5.18 for loads, $\mathrm{R}=0 \Omega, \mathrm{~L}=250 \mu \mathrm{H} ; \mathrm{R}=0 \Omega, \mathrm{~L}=500 \mu \mathrm{H} ; \mathrm{R}=5 \Omega, \mathrm{~L}=250 \mu \mathrm{H} ; \mathrm{R}=5 \Omega, \mathrm{~L}=500 \mu \mathrm{H}$. In all cases the phase margin is better than $70^{\circ}$ which for a second order dominated system would be equivalent to a damping ratio of approximately 0.7 . For the $\mathrm{R}=5 \Omega$ and $\mathrm{L}=500 \mu \mathrm{H}$ load the bandwidth is $1.2 \times 10^{5} \mathrm{rads} / \mathrm{sec}$ or 17.5 kHz . This bandwidth is sufficient to give reasonable performance at the maximum modulation frequency of 10 kHz . In fact at 10 kHz a greater restriction on the large signal performance is the available voltage for raising the output inductor current. This limits the amplitude that can be reproduced without a slew rate limiting effect occurring.

Lastly the assumption that the modulator functions as a linear amplifier must be checked.


Figure 5.17 Output Current Control Loop Step Response


Figure 5.18 Output Current Control Open Loop Bode Plots for Three Typical Loads

From Chapter Two the maximum ripple for the five level modulation scheme was found to be(equation 2.2-3):

$$
\Delta \mathrm{I}=\frac{\mathrm{E}}{16 \mathrm{Lf}_{\mathrm{S}}}
$$

This assumes that the ripple voltage across the resistance is low. This is guaranteed if a capacitor of sufficient size is placed across it. However if the inductance is sufficiently large to make the ripple current low the equation is still valid without the necessity for the capacitor. The output inductor chosen is $250 \mu \mathrm{H}$ and for $\mathrm{E}=280 \mathrm{~V}$ the peak to peak ripple will be:

$$
\Delta \mathrm{I}=\frac{\mathrm{E}}{16 \mathrm{Lf}_{\mathrm{s}}}=\frac{280}{16 \times 250 \times 10^{-6} \times 50000}=1.4 \mathrm{~A}_{\mathrm{p}-\mathrm{p}}
$$

This ripple signal is at a frequency 200 kHz . The objective is to calculate the ripple signal level at the modulator input. More specifically the rate of rise of the ripple signal should significantly less than the ramp slope ( $>10$ times will be used) to ensure chatter free linear operation, [1]. The $200 \mathrm{kHz}\left(1.25 \times 10^{6} \mathrm{rads} / \mathrm{sec}\right)$ ripple signal is first attenuated by the transducer since its bandwidth is 100 kHz :

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{G}(\omega \mathrm{j})_{\text {trans }}=\frac{0.05}{1+1.6 \times 10^{-6} \omega \mathrm{j}} \\
& \left|\mathrm{G}\left(1.25 \times 10^{6}\right)\right|=0.05 \times \sqrt{1+\left(1.6 \times 10^{-6} \times 1.25 \times 10^{6}\right)^{2}}=0.0224
\end{aligned}
$$

This ripple signal is passed to the controller. The P+I controllers gain at this frequency is essentially given by the proportional component $\left(K_{p}=10\right)$ since the integral sections attenuation is very high.

The ripple signal at the input to the modulator will therefore be:

$$
\Delta \mathrm{V}=10 \times 0.0224 \times 1.4=0.314 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{p}-\mathrm{p}}
$$

The average $\mathrm{dV} / \mathrm{dt}$ would be given by:

$$
\frac{\mathrm{dV}}{\mathrm{dt}}=\frac{0.314}{2.5}=125 \mathrm{mV} / \mu \mathrm{S}
$$

The ramp slope is $1 \mathrm{~V} / \mu \mathrm{S}$ and so therefore the ripple slope is eight times less than the ramp slope. No chatter problems are encountered on the scale model. It must be remembered that the peak ripple was used for the calculation and that the average is $63.7 \%$ of this.

## 6. SIMULATION AND SCALE MODEL TEST RESULTS


#### Abstract

With large converters it is not advisable to carry out debugging using the full power unit with untested control circuitry. The only practical approach is to divide the task into manageable steps. In this project the overall control and converter topology was proven by simulation. A controller design was directly based on the simulation model. This controller was constructed and debugged using a tenth scale power circuit. A prototype buck converter was designed constructed and tested with any necessary modifications being carried out. The final step is to implement the tested controller with the proven set of buck converters to form the final amplifier.


This chapter is devoted to the presentation and discussion of the simulation model and the tenth scale model results. Although the construction of the amplifier is not yet complete the presented results are thought to be representative of the final unit.

Particular attention is drawn to the accuracy which the simulation model predicts the performance of the tenth scale model.

### 6.1 Simulation Technique

The entire amplifier was modeled in the control systems simulation package "TUTSIM". This package is very useful for this application since it combines standard logic as well as analog functions. The block diagrams of Figure 5.5 A and B were essentially duplicated in the "TUTSIM" model. All the major signals that are available in the controller hardware are also available in the simulation. Using this approach major control system problems could be resolved before any hardware was designed and built.

This saved expensive hardware redesign which more than likely would be necessary in this complex system.

The power circuit was modeled at a systems level. For example the buck converters are modeled using relays that produce the two voltage levels. Special logic is used to mimic the unipolar current behavior and therefore discontinuous conduction. The power circuit is only modeled such that it behaves accurately from the control systems point of view. There is no attempt to model the power circuit devices accurately since this would add little if anything to the validity of the control systems model. The entire model is very large, approximately 400 "TUTSIM" blocks, and is beyond the scope of this report. However the analog control section and the power converter section are presented since they are relevant to the results which are presented and serve to demonstrate the general techniques involved.

Shown in Figure 6.1 is a drawing of the power circuit "TUTSIM" model. For an explanation of the blocks the "TUTSIM" Control Systems Simulation Manual should be consulted, [18]. The bridge is modeled by four relays supplying $\pm 280 \mathrm{~V}$ on command from a logic signal. Each relay represents the output voltage from a converter. The outputs from the "AP" and "AN" converters are subtracted and passed through an integrator, (Block 281). This represents the differential voltage being applied across the coupling transformers magnetising inductance. The output of block 281 is the magnetising current $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{ma}}$. The outputs of the "AP" and "AN" converters are also added and divided by two (Block 285), to produce the voltage at the coupling transformer center $\operatorname{tap} \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{a}}$. The same applies to the " B " leg which has an output voltage of $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{b}}$ and a magnetising current of $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{mb}}$. The voltages $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{a}}$ and $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{b}}$ are subtracted (Block 286), to produce the voltage $\mathrm{V}_{\text {out }}$ which appears across the R-L load (Block 288). The output of block 288 is the load current which is measured by a transducer (Block 290). The output current is also divided by two and summed and subtracted from the $I_{m a}$ to produce $I_{a p}$ and $I_{a n}$ respectively (Blocks 317 and 277).


Figure 6.1 "TUTSIM" Model of the Bridge Inverter

The same occurs in the "B" leg (Blocks 298 and 299). Four transducers feedback the four converter currents (Blocks 314, 318, 302 and 303). In reference to the "AP" converter $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{ap}}$ is monitored by a comparator in the form of an NAND gate (Block 315). Once the current reaches zero a logic " 1 " is supplied to the relay control input by the OR function, (Block 316). This forces the "AP" converter output voltage to +280 V . This mimics the behavior of the real converter in that if the current were to reverse it would flow by the IGBT's inverse diode to the positive rail. The power circuit model gives access to the major switching waveforms plus the four converter currents and the output current.

Figure 6.2 shows a block diagram of the analog control section of the controller. This is essentially based on Figure 5.4, the operation of which has previously been explained. Again all the analog signals are available for observation as they would be in the hardware implementation.

### 6.2 Small Scale Model and Simulation Results

A one tenth scale model ( $1 / 10$ th bus voltage; $1 / 10$ th output current) of the power circuit was constructed to test the controller operation. This was essential since it would be impractical if not dangerous to try and debug the controller using the full power amplifier. The switching devices used, were power mosfets gated by pulse transformer coupled drivers. In order to rescale the feedback levels the hall effect current transducers had their gain lifted by ten times by placing ten turns through their magnetic window rather than one. Other than this the power circuit is the same as presented in Figure 5.2.

The major power circuit waveforms and amplifier performance results predicted by simulation and those obtained with the scale model are now compared.


Figure 6.2 "TUTSIM" Model of the Analog Control Section

Figure 6.3 (A) shows the simulated and the scale model output voltage for a 10 kHz modulating frequency. The integrity of the five level modulation in both the simulation and the scale model compare well with the open loop ideal simulation presented in Figure 2.10. This means that for the parameter settings used the non-ideal aspects of the practical implementation do not seriously impair the performance. This is enforced by Table 6.1 which shows the output voltage frequency components found in the tenth scale model output. As with the ideal open loop simulation the spectrum consists of sideband components spaced at increments of the modulation frequency around a 200 kHz suppressed carrier. Most of the spectral content due to switching is above 150 kHz and therefore is ordinarily attenuated strongly by the load transfer function, the output current therefore has only low levels of these components.

The spectral purity is demonstrated in the high quality of the output current waveshape. The scale model output current and the current produced by converter "AP" for 10 kHz operation are shown in Figure 6.4. The spectrum presented in Table 6.1 shows a 50 kHz component approximately 25 dB below the fundamental. The load current was $1.4 \mathrm{~A}_{\text {rms }}$ through a $1+23 \mathrm{j} \Omega$ at 10 kHz load, therefore the RMS output voltage is $32.2 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{rms}}$. The 50 kHz component would therefore be 25 dB down on this or $1.8 \mathrm{~V}_{\text {rms }}$. This would be attenuated by the $1+23 \mathrm{j} \Omega$ load by a further 23 times. The output current component at 50 kHz will hence be $0.08 \mathrm{~A}_{\text {rms }}$, which rides on top of the 1.4 $\mathrm{A}_{\text {rms }}$ modulating signal. As discussed in Chapters Two and Five the action of the bias current controller is mainly responsible for the production of the 50 kHz component. The parameter settings used represent an acceptable compromise between the the 50 kHz level and the bias current control loop bandwidth.

Shown in Figure 6.5 parts (A) and (B) are the simulated and the scale model output current plus the "AP" converter current for an $8 \mathrm{~A}_{\text {peak }} 1 \mathrm{kHz}$ modulation.


Figure 6.3(a) Simulated Output Voltage for 10 kHz Modulation
Vertical Scale - 200V/div
Time Base - 20uS/div

| TEKTRONIX 2232 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\triangle \mathrm{U} 1=$ | Q.0E |  | TRI | $=-$ 电 |  |  | $\triangle T=$ | $\begin{aligned} & 504 \\ & \text { SAU } \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\sigma_{\mu s}$ |
|  |  |  |  |  | 2000 |  |  |  |  |
| RUN |  |  |  | $1 \cap H$ | 010 | 101 |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  | $1]$ |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | - |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| . |  |  | $19 \pi^{4}$ |  |  |  | 77 |  |  |
|  |  | , | 11 |  |  |  |  | 13 | - |
| 2 L |  | $\downarrow 2 \mathrm{~L}$ |  | SAM | PLE | 20 | $\mu \mathrm{s}$ |  |  |

Figure 6.3(b) Scale Model Output Voltage for 10 kHz Modulation
Vertical Scale-200V/div
Time Base - 20uS/div

| Frequency | Amplitude | dB |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 10 kHz | 32.2 Vrms | 0.0 dB |
| 50 kHz | 1.45 Vrms | -27.0 dB |
| 75 kHz | 1.45 Vrms | -27.0 dB |
| 100 kHz | 1.61 Vrms | -26.0 dB |
| 150 kHz | 1.36 Vrms | -27.5 dB |
| 170 kHz | 5.11 Vrms | -16.0 dB |
| 190 kHz | 3.22 Vrms | -20.0 dB |
| 200 kHz | 0.00 Vrms | - |
| 210 kHz | 2.55 Vrms | -22.0 dB |
| 230 kHz | 4.83 Vrms | -16.5 dB |
| 250 kHz | 1.45 Vrms | -27.0 dB |

Table 6.1 Output Voltage Spectrum Modulation $\mathbf{- 1 0 k H z}$
Output Current - 1.4Arms
Load - 1+23j ohms


Figure 6.4 Scale Model Output Current for 10 kHz Modulation
Top Trace - "AP" Buck Converter Current
Bottom Trace - Output Current
Vertical Scale - 2A/div
Time Base-20uS/div


Figure 6.5(a) Simulated Operation; $1 \mathrm{kHz}, 56 \mathrm{Arms}, 1.5+2 \mathrm{j}$ load
Top Trace - Buck Converter Current
Bottom Trace - Output Current
Vertical Scale-40A/div
Time Base $-0.2 \mathrm{mS} / \mathrm{div}$


Figure 6.5(b) Scale Model Operation; $1 \mathrm{kHz}, 5.6 \mathrm{Arms}, 1.5+2 \mathrm{j}$ load
Top Trace - Buck Converter Current
Bottom Trace - Output Current
Vertical Scale - 4A/div
Time Base $-0.2 \mathrm{mS} / \mathrm{div}$

In this case the bias current setpoint was set such that the peak converter current is 11 A which would correspond to 110 A in the full scale unit. The minimum converter current is approximately 2.5 A which would correspond to 25 A in the full scale unit. This gives the scope to reduce the bias setpoint to bring the peak current down to 90 A without discontinuous conduction occurring. The minimum current would then be approximately 5.9 A as predicted by eq. $5.5-34$. This would imply a setpoint current of 20 A and therefore at low modulating frequencies the peak converter current would rise to 100 A . The very modest 50 kHz ripple can be seen on top of the converter current, its $10 \mathrm{~A}_{\mathrm{p}-\mathrm{p}}$ level, as calculated from eq. 2.4-4, being confirmed.

Figure 6.6 parts (A) and (B) show the output current and the "AP" converter output voltage for a 1 kHz modulation as predicted by simulation and as obtained from the scale model. The load impedance has been raised to $3+3 j \Omega$ so that the control system is forced into frequency dropping. The pulse stretching is clearly evident. As mentioned in Chapter Five the frequency is reduced to 5 kHz at the peak output voltage.

The closed loop frequency response measured using a Hewlett Packard Dynamic signal analyser is presented in Figure 6.7. The analyzer's periodic random noise source was injected into the amplifier input and the output current was measured at the output of the current transducer. For the load of $\mathrm{R}=5 \Omega ; \mathrm{L}=500 \mu \mathrm{H}$ the closed loop bandwidth was found to be approximately 20 kHz which is consistent with the calculations of Chapter Five.

Lastly the output current spectrum for a 1 kHz 7 Amp peak modulation signal was measured to gauge the linearity of the closed loop system. The harmonics up to 10 kHz are shown in Figure 6.8. The major harmonics are the $2 \mathrm{nd}, 3 \mathrm{rd}$ and 7 th harmonics. The Total Harmonic Distortion (THD) was measured as $0.34 \%$. This is more than adequate for the application.


Figure 6.6(a) Simulated Frequency Dropping Mode; $1 \mathrm{kHz}, 40 \mathrm{Arms}, 3+3 \mathrm{j}$ load Top Trace - Buck Converter Output Voltage 200V/div

## Bottom Trace - Output Current (40A/div)

Time Base - $0.1 \mathrm{mS} /$ div


Figure 6.6(b) Simulated Frequency Dropping Mode; $1 \mathrm{kHz}, 4 \mathrm{Arms}, 3+3 \mathrm{j}$ load Top Trace - Buck Converter Output Voltage ( $20 \mathrm{~V} /$ div) Bottom Trace - Output Current (4A/div)
Time Base - $0.1 \mathrm{mS} /$ div

It is thought that the origin of the distortion is mainly from two sources:
(a) The modulator output pulsewidth jump during the change in the polarity signal "P" as already explained in Chapter Five.
(b) Slight non-linearity in the ramps due to the voltage dependant properties of the dielectric constant of the integration capacitors.

The simulation results adequately predicted the model responses. Great value was found from the simulation in the design of and evaluating the performance of the control system before any hardware was designed and constructed. This meant there was minimal requirement for hardware changes. The tenth scale model is a necessary intermediate step to provide a test bed for the controller, rather than trying to commission it on the final unit. The tenth scale model confirmed the theoretical calculations and the simulation results.


Figure 6.7 Scale Model Closed Loop Response; 5ohm, 500uH Load


Figure 6.8 Scale Model Output current Spectrum; 1 kHz , 5Arms, 3+3j load

## 7. CONCLUSIONS

A new five level inverter topology suitable for switching amplifier application has been developed. The topology requires just four power switches as compared to previous systems which use eight devices. The new converter consists of four independent buck converters coupled by transformers. Five level modulation allows extension of the amplifiers bandwidth and improvement in the output quality without increase in the switch frequency. In a tenth scale model and computer simulations a bandwidth of 20 kHz was easily achieved.

Each buck converter consists of a Insulated Gate Bipolar Transistor with associated snubbing/clamping system and freewheel diode. The converter is capable of supplying 100 A maximum from a 560 V nominal bus. The innovative regenerative snubbing/clamping system allows the buck conveter to switch at 50 kHz with a loss of only 741 watts at rated load and $50 \%$ duty ratio. The negative buck converter cell has been thoroughly tested to a load of $75 \mathrm{~A}, 50 \%$ duty ratio. Loading beyond this has not been carried out due to the lack of availability of loading banks. However the results obtained at 75 A indicate that thermally the converter will carry the 100A rated load. Semiconductor voltage stress levels were also shown to be well within device ratings at the 75 A load. These would also not be expected to be violated at the 100 A load.

A thorough understanding of semiconductor device characteristics is essential to successful converter design at high powers and high switch frequencies. A major contribution of this thesis has been the development of methods of predicting diode reverse recovery behaviour from limited manufacturer's data. This was necessary to accurately determine diode switching loss which is very significant at the 50 kHz switching frequency.

Failure to address diode switching loss in high frequency, high power converters often results in unworkable designs. A detailed procedure has been developed to predict power diode reverse recovery performance under any operating condition. It is believed that this procedure will be an important design aid for power electronic engineers.

Specialised control techniques applicable to the new topology have been developed and proven. These include a four phase modulation system which uses frequency dropping to obtain extended dynamic range beyond the normal pulse dropping or saturation range and a leg bias current control system. The leg bias system controls the current flowing in the coupling transformer. This bias current is necessary to maintain conduction in all buck converters and hence the five level modulation capability. Expressions have been established which allow the setting of bias current control parameters. The combined topology and control system effectively eliminates the possibility of a leg shoot through fault which often occurs in conventional bridge inverters.

Extensive use of computer simulation tools was made during the buck converter and control system design process. In addition to this a tenth scale model was constructed to prove the control system hardware and the topology converter topology operation. This allowed debugging and performance tuning to be conducted in stages prior to implementation of the final amplifier. This approach though time consuming is considered essential in high power converter designs. As a result of this technique the amount of redesign and modifications required to either the control hardware or the buck converter has been minimal. The tenth scale model results and the corresponding computer simulation results are both presented. In every case the the hardware model performs almost identically to the computer model.

Although the final full power amplifier is not yet completely constructed it is expected that commissioning will be straight forward. The detailed design verification approach used throughout this project allows this statement to be made with confidence.

Additionally the design is very decoupled in its nature. Each buck converter works semi-independently. Their operation is not greatly changed when they form part of the amplifier converter. The individual buck converter operation has been proven and therefore should perform equally well in the complete inverter. The control system and topology implementation have been shown to be viable by both simulation and a tenth scale model. Debugging and tuning of the control hardware has been done and only minor adjustments if any will be necessary on the final unit.

## REFERENCES

[1] Wolfs P.J., Hastie L.M., "A 15 kVa Switching Amplifier for Controlled source Audiomagnetotelluric Sounding Applications", Journal of Electrical and Electronics Engineering Australia, Vol 8, No.1, march 1988, pp 47-54.
[2] Marchesoni M., Mazzucchelli M., Tenconi S., "A Non-Conventional Power Converter for Plasma Stabilization", PESC April 1988, pp 122-129.
[3] M.Marchesoni, "High Performance Current Control Techniques for Applications to Multilevel High Power Voltage Source Inverters", IEEE Conference Record IAS AGM 1989, pp 672-682.
[4] Kuniami, Oguchi,Takofumi, Kusakobe, Fujio Sudo, "Pulse Width Modulation Method of a Single-Phase Multi-Level Inverter", International Journal of Electronics 1987 Vol. 63 No.6, pp 951-960.
[5] Adel M. Kamel, Thomas H. Ortmeyer, "Harmonic Reduction in Single Phase Inverters using a Parallel Operation Technique", International Journal of Electronics, 1990 Vol. 69 No.3, pp 403-419.
[6] P.J.Wolfs, F.M.Flinders, "An Improved Phase Leg", Australian Provisional Patent Specification No PK7430, 24 ${ }^{\text {th }}$ July 1991.
[7] F.M.Flinders, P.J.Wolfs, K.Kwong, "An Improved Modulation Capability Inverter", Conference on Industrial Drives, University of Central Queensland, September 1991, pp 273-277.
[8] Toshiba Corp., "Toshiba GTR Module Data Book", 1989, pp 557.
[9] Gert Fregien, Hans Georg Langer, Hans-Christoph Skudelny, "A Regenerative Snubber for a 200kVA GTO Inverter", PESC 88 Record, April 1988, pp 498-505.
[10] Zach F.C., Kaiser K.H., Kolar J.W., Haselsteiner F.J., "New Lossless Turn-off(snubber) Networks for Inverters,including Circuits for Blocking Voltage Limitation", IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics, Vol PE-1 No.2, April 1986, pp 65-75.
[11] Holtz J., Salama S., Werner K.H. "A Non-dissipative Snubber Circuit for High-Power GTO Inverters", IEEE Transactions on Industrial Applications, Vol. 25 No.4, July/Aug 1989, pp 620-626.
[12] McMurry W., "Efficient Snubbers for Voltage Source GTO Inverters", IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics, July 1987, Vol. PE-2, No. 3, pp 264-272.
[13] Bendien J.C., Broeck H., Fregien G., "Recovery Circuit for Snubber Energy in Power Electronic Applications with High Switching Frequencies", IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics, Vol. 3 No.1, Jan. 1988, pp 26-30.
[14] Angelo Ferraro, "An Overview of Low-loss Snubber Technology for Transistor Converters" ,Corporate Research and Development General Electric Company Schenectaty, N.Y., IEEE Conference Record IAS AGM 1982, pp 466-477.
[15] Carl G. Steyn, "Analysis and Optimisation of Regenerative Linear Snubbers",IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics, Vol. 4 No.3, July 1989, pp 362-370.
[16] Paul W. Tuinenga, "SPICE - A Guide to Circuit Simulation \& Analysis Using PSPICE, Prentice Hall 1988.
[17] Cuk and Middlebrook, "Switch Mode Power Conversion Part II", Vol IE-30 No 1. Feburary 1983.
[18] Meerman Automation, "TUTSIM Interactive Simulation Language Users Manual", Meerman Automation, Netherlands, 1983.
[19] IXYS Fast Recovery Epitaxial Diodes DSEI \& BYT Series Data Sheet, March 1990.
[20] Thompson Semiconducteurs, "Superswitch Rectifier Diodes Databook", 1986.
[21] Motorola Semiconductors, "Rectifiers and Zener Diodes Databook", Rev 4 1987.
[22] Philips Semiconductors, "Power Diodes Databook S2a", 1985.
[23] Paole Antognetti, Giuseppe Massobrio, "Semiconductor device Modeling with Spice", McGraw Hill 1988.
[24] Yung-Chii liang, Victor j Gosbell, "Diode Foward and Reverse Recovery Model for Power Electronic SPICE Simulations", IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics, Vol 5 No 3., July 1990, pp 346-356.
[25] Rahul Chakhauala \& Eric Carroll, "A Snubber Design Tool for P-N Junction Reverse Recovery using a more Accurate Simulation of the Reverse Recovery Waveform", IEEE Transactions on Industrial Applications, Vol. 27 No.1, January/February 1991, pp 74-84.
[26] B.Laska, S.Winternheimer, "Simulation of Turn-Off Dynamics in Fast Recovery Power Diodes", Technische Hochschule Darmstadt, Federal Republic of Germany, 1991.
[27] James F. Gibbons, "Semiconductor Electronics", McGraw Hill 1966.
[28] Gandhi, "Semiconductor Power Devices" ,John Whily \& Sons, 1977.
[29] J.Seymour, "Semiconductor Power Devices", Pitman \& sons, 1968.
[30] F.M.Flinders, P.J.Wolfs, K.Kwong, "Prediction of Power Diode Reverse Recovery Behaviour from Limited Data, AUPCEC 1992 Conference, QUT Brisbane Australia.
[31] D.F.Courtney, "A Brief Analysis of the Transient Forward Voltage Drop in Fast Diodes" ,IEE Proceedings Vol 132 Pt1, No6 Dec 1985, pp 227-280.
[32] Shortt D.J., Michael W.T., Avant R.L., "A 600-W Four Stage Phase Shifted Parallel DC-to-DC Converter", IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics, Vol. PE-2, No2, April 1987, pp 101-107.
[33] Mathworks inc, "Matlab Users Guide", March 1992.
[34] Kjeld Thorborg, "Power Electronics", Prentice Hall 1988, pp 340
[35] Marconi Electronics, "MEDL Fast Thyristor \& Diode Handbook (Low and Medium Power)", Issue 2 1981, pp 78
[36] P.C.Sen, "Power Electronics", McGraw Hill 1987, pp 7
[37] Jacob Millman, "Microelectronics: Digital and Analogue Circuits and Systems", McGrall Hill 1979
[38] Roderstein Film Capacitors Data Book, 1987/88, pp 5,85
[39] Theodore Wildi, "Electrical Power Technology", John Wiley 1985.
[40] Ronald E.Walpole, "Probability and statstics for Engineers and Scientists", Macmillan 1972, pp 111,512
[41] Arcol, "Arcol Type HS Aluminum Housed Power Wirewound Resistors Data Sheet".
[42] SGS Thomsom Microelectronics, "Smart Power Application Manual", June 1989, pp 14.
[43] B.W.Williams, "Power Electronics Devices Drivers and Applications", McMillan 1987, pp 95.
[44] Middlebrook R.D., Predicting Modulator Phase lag in PWM Converter Feedback Loops", Powercon 1981 April 27-30 Dallas Texas.
[45] Richard C. Dorf, "Modern Control Systems", Addison-Wesley 1986.
[46] F.M.Flinders, Control Systems Lecture Notes, 1990
[47] Earl Rainville, "Elementry Differential Equations",MacMillan 1974.

## APPENDiX A

Self Oscillating Inverter Spice Model Listing

```
R1 1 2 68
VZ1 7 2 12v
VZ2 }80012
D1 0 7 DFR104
D2 2 8 DFR104
VZ3 9 5 12v
VZ4 10 0 12v
D3 0 9 DFR104
D4 5 10 DFR104
R2 3 0 15
R3 4 0 15
R4 6 5 68
L6 2 
L7 4 5 5 10
Kf L6 L7 . }99999 KRM7_N30
R5 3 111 56
R6 4 12 56
D5 0 11 DFR104
D6 0 12 DFR104
D100 11 15 DFR104
D101 12 16 DFR104
Q1 15 111 13 QBC639
Q2 15 13 13 0 QBC639
R7 11 13 10K
R8 13 0 100
Q3 16 12 12 14 QBC639
Q4 16 14 0 QBC639
R9 12 14 10K
R10 14 0 100
R11 1 15 470
R12 16 6 470
R13 1 17 68
C1 17 15 .022uf
R14 6 22 68
C2 22 16 0.022uf
D7 0 15 DFR104
D8 15 18 DFR104
R17 18 19 5
VZ5 19 0 12v
D9 0 16 DFR104
VZ6 20 0 12v
R18 20 21 5
D10 16 21 DFR104
R15 15 23 15
R16 16 24 15
M1 25 23 0 0 MIRF451
M2 26 24 0 0 MIRF451
D11 25 27 DBY329
D12 26 27 DBY329
R19 27 28 56
VZ7 28 0 312v
C3 35 0 5uf IC=130v
L1 
L2
Lc 25 31 0.05uH
Ra 31 32 0.1
Ld 26 33 0.05uH
Rb 33 34 0.1
```

```
L4 29 0
L5 0 30 5
Kx L1 L2 L3 L4 L5 . }99999 KEC70_N27
La 6 29 .1uH
Lb 1 30.1uH
L3 36 37 75
Rc 36 38 0.3
Le 38 39.5uH
R20 39 40 33
C4 40 37 .001uf
D13 0 39 DBY329
D14 0 37 DBY329
D15 39 41 DBY329
D16 37 41 DBY329
R21 35 15 12K
VL 41 0 280v
Is 0 100 PULSE(0 100A . 1u . 1u 1.5u .01u 20u)
Cx 100 0 10uf IC=130v
Rd 100 35 3.3
Lx 100 35 50uH
*
.OPTIONS VNTOL=1mV ABSTOL=1mA CHGTOL=.1pC ITL4=100 RELTOL=.01 ITL5=1
*
.MODEL DBY329 D(Is=.1mA N=2 RS=6m CJO=100pF VJ=.7 M=.3 FC=.1 TT=.02u
+ BV=1000V IBV=1mA EG=1.11 XTI=3.0)
*
.MODEL KEC70_N27 CORE(MS=500E+3 ALPHA=2E-5 A=26 K=18 C=1.05
                                    AREA=2.79 PATH=14.4 GAP=.008)
*
MODEL KRM7_N30 CORE(MS=250E+3 ALPHA=.5E-5 A=20 K=30 C=1.5
+ AREA=.4 PATH=2.98)
*
.mode1 MIRF451 NMOS(Leve1=3 Gamma=0 Delta=0 Eta=0 Theta=0 Kappa=0 Vm.
+ Tox=100n Uo=600 Phi=.6 Rs=32.16m Kp=20.69u W=2.1 L=2u
+ Vto=3.415 Rd=.2606 Rds=1.44MEG Cbd=1.732n Pb=.8 Mj=.5 Fc=.5
+ Cgso=4.12n Cgdo=56.28p Rg=4.086 Is=1E-30)
*
.MODEL DFR104 D(IS=100E-15 RS=.16 CJO=2PF TT=12NS BV=100 IBV=100E-15
*
.mode1 QBC640 PNP(Is=9.913f Xti=3 Eg=1.11 Vaf=90.7 Bf=197.8 Ne=2.264
+ Ise=6.191p Ikf=.7322 Xtb=1.5 Br=3.369 Nc=2 Isc=0 Ikr=0 Rc:
+ Cjc=14.57p Vjc=.75 Mjc=.3333 Fc=.5 Cje=20.16p Vje=.75
+ Mje=.3333 Tr=29.17n Tf=405.6p Itf=.4 Vtf=10 Xtf=2)
*
.model QBC639 NPN(Is=3.108f Xti=3 Eg=1.11 Vaf=131.5 Bf=217.5 Ne=1.5.
Ise=190.7f Ikf=1.296 Xtb=1.5 Br=6.18 Nc=2 Isc=0 Ikr=0 Rc=`
Cjc=14.57p Vjc=.75 Mjc=.3333 Fc=.5 Cje=26.08p Vje=.75
Mje=.3333 Tr=51.35n Tf=451p Itf=.1 Vtf=10 Xtf=2)
PROBE
.TRAN .1u 200u UIC
. END
```



Figure A1 SOI Spice Model Schematic Diagram

## APPENDIX B

## Selection of Resistor $\mathbf{R}_{\mathbf{f}}$

The diode forward resistance can be neglected since it is assumed that the added series Resistance is much larger. The following variable definitions and reference to Figure B1 will be used:
$\mathrm{I}_{i}$ - Forward current for the $i$ th diode ( $i=1$ to $n$ )
$\mathrm{V}_{i}$-Forward voltage for the $i$ th diode ( $i=1$ to $n$ )
$\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{T}}$ - Total voltage drop across resistor diode pair
$\nabla$ - Mean diode forward voltage
I - Mean diode forward current
$\sigma_{\mathrm{v}}-$ Standard deviation for $\mathrm{V}_{\text {to }}$
$\sigma_{\mathrm{i}}-$ Standard Deviation for I


FIGURE PARALLEL DIODE CURRENT BALANCE

For the $i$ th series path:

$$
\mathrm{RI}_{i}+\mathrm{V}_{i}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{T}} \quad \mathrm{~B} 1
$$

Therefore:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left[\mathrm{R}_{i}+\mathrm{V}_{i}\right]=n \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{T}} \tag{B2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Which can be re-written as:

$$
\mathrm{R} \sum_{i=1}^{n} \mathrm{I}_{i}+\sum_{i=1}^{n} \mathrm{~V}_{i}=n \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{T}}
$$

B3

Re-arranging and using equation 4.5-1 gives:

$$
\mathrm{R} \overline{\mathrm{I}}+\overline{\mathrm{V}}=\mathrm{RI}_{i}+\mathrm{V}_{i}
$$

Further re-arrangement yields:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{R}\left(\mathrm{I}_{i}-\overline{\mathrm{I}}\right)+\left(\mathrm{V}_{i}-\overline{\mathrm{V}}\right)=0 \tag{B4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore the following equation is valid:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left[\mathrm{R}\left(\mathrm{I}_{i}-\overline{\mathrm{I}}\right)+\left(\mathrm{V}_{i}-\overline{\mathrm{V}}\right)\right]^{2}=0 \tag{B5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Expanding this gives:

$$
\sum_{i}^{n}\left\{\left[\mathrm{R}\left(\mathrm{I}_{i}-\overline{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right]^{2}+\left(\mathrm{V}_{i}-\overline{\mathrm{V}}\right)^{2}+2 \mathrm{R}\left(\mathrm{I}_{i}-\overline{\mathrm{I}}\right)\left(\mathrm{V}_{i}-\overline{\mathrm{V}}\right)\right\}=0
$$

B6

Using equation 4.5-2 results in:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i}^{n}\left\{\left[\mathrm{R}\left(\mathrm{I}_{i}-\overline{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right]^{2}+\left(\mathrm{V}_{i}-\overline{\mathrm{V}}\right)^{2}-2 \mathrm{R}^{2}\left(\mathrm{I}_{i}-\overline{\mathrm{I}}\right)^{2}\right\}=0 \tag{B7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Grouping terms gives:

$$
\sum^{n}\left\{\left(\mathrm{~V}_{i}-\overline{\mathrm{V}}\right)^{2}-\left[\mathrm{R}\left(\mathrm{I}_{i}-\overline{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right]^{2}\right\}=0
$$

B8

It therefore can be shown that the following is true:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sqrt{\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(V_{i}-\overline{\mathrm{V}}\right)^{2}}{n-1}}=\mathrm{R} \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(\mathrm{I}_{i}-\overline{\mathrm{I}}\right)^{2}} \frac{n-1}{} \tag{B9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Which is an expression relating the standard deviations:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{\mathrm{v}}=\mathrm{R} \sigma_{\mathrm{i}} \tag{B10}
\end{equation*}
$$

## APPENDIX C.

## Freewheel Diode Reverse Maximum Current Calculations

Using the method outlined in Chapter Three. From the DSE1 60-10A data sheet ,[19]:

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}=32 \mathrm{~A} @ \mathrm{~m}=480 \mathrm{~A} / \mu \mathrm{S}, \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}=60 \mathrm{~A}, \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j}}=100^{\circ} \mathrm{C}
$$

A junction temperature of $125^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ will be assumed. The maximum bus voltage $(672 \mathrm{~V})$ will also be used since this represents the worst case. From equation 3-41

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}\left(\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j} 2}\right)=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}\left(\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{j} 1}\right)\left[1+\frac{\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{j} 2}-\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{i} 2}}{100}\right] \\
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}(125)=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}(100)\left[1+\frac{125-100}{100}\right]=32 \times 1.25=40 \mathrm{~A} \\
& \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{x}}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}}{m}=\frac{40+60}{480}=0.208 \mu \mathrm{~S} \\
& \frac{T_{m}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{x}}}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}}{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}}=\frac{40}{40+60}=0.4
\end{aligned}
$$

From Table 3.1:

$$
\frac{T_{\mathrm{x}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}}=1.6
$$

$$
\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{t}}=\frac{\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}}{1.6}=\frac{0.208}{1.6}=0.13 \mu \mathrm{~S}
$$

The actual operating conditions for each diode is as follows:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}=16.7 \mathrm{~A} \\
& \mathrm{~m}=\frac{2 \mathrm{E}}{6 \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{f}}}=\frac{672}{6 \times 2}=56.0 \mathrm{~A} / \mu \mathrm{S}(\text { note: } 6 \text { parallel diodes) } \\
& \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{rm}}=\mathrm{E}=336 \text { volts (dynamic sharing is assumed) }
\end{aligned}
$$

Using the method outlined in section 3.12:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{o}}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}}{\mathrm{~m}}=\frac{16.7}{56.0}=0.3 \mu \mathrm{~S} \\
& \frac{\mathrm{~T}_{0}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}}=\frac{0.30}{0.13}=2.3
\end{aligned}
$$

From Table 3.1:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}}=3.1 \\
& \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{x}}=3.1 \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{T}}=3.1 \times .130=0.403 \mu \mathrm{~S} \\
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}=\mathrm{m} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{x}}-\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}=56.0 \times 0.403-16.7=5.87 \mathrm{~A}
\end{aligned}
$$

The total freewheel diode reverse current would then be 35.2 A .


## APPENDIX D

## APPENDIX E

## IGBT Driver Spice Model Listing

```
Vp 1 0 pulse(0 15v 0 5us 5us 1S 1S)
Vm 0 2 PULSE(0 15V 0 5uS 5uS 1S 1S)
Id 3 0 PULSE(0 50uA 5uS 0.01uS 0.01uS 2uS 20uS)
R1 1 3 39K
Q1 4 3 16 BC560
Ra 1 16 10
D5 0 4 D1N914
D6 4 104 D1N914
D7 104 0 D1N914
Rn 4 2 8K2
D1 4 5 D1N914
Q2 5 4 6 BC550
R2 1 5 1K
R3 6 0 27
M4 107 5 1 1 1 VN2222
Rz 107 7 100
R4 7 2 680
D2 21 7 D1N914
Cx 7 21 330pF
R10 107 21 1K
Q5 8 21 0 BC337
D3 21 8 D1N914
Q6 9 21 0 BC327
D4 9 21 D1N914
R5 1 8 220
R6 9 2 220
Q7 1 8 8 10 BC637
Q8 0 8 10 BC638
Q9 0 9 11 BC637
Q10 2 9 11 BC638
R7 10}10121
R8 11 13 15
M11 }1
M12 20 13 2 2 IRDF010
Rb 19 14 14.3
Rc 14 20 3.3
Ciss 14 0 .luF
*
.model BC550 NPN(Is=3.108f Xti=3 Eg=1.11 Vaf=131.5 Bf=325 Ne=1.541
Ise=190.7f Ikf=50mA Xtb=1.5 Br=6.18 Nc=2 Isc=0 Ikr=0 Rc=1
Cjc=6p Vjc=.75 Mjc=. 3333 Fc=. 5 Cje=12p Vje=. }7
Mje=.3333 Tr=51.35n Tf=0.5nS Itf=27mA Vtf=10 Xtf=.7)
*
.model BC560 PNP(Is=3.108f Xti=3 Eg=1.11 Vaf=131.5 Bf=300 Ne=1.541
Ise=190.7f Ikf=10mA Xtb=1.5 Br=6.18 Nc=2 Isc=0 Ikr=0 Rc=1
Cjc=4.5p Vjc=.75 Mjc=.3333 Fc=.5 Cje=6.0p Vje=.75
Mje=.3333 Tr=20n Tf=0.3nS Itf=7.4mA Vtf=10 Xtf=.72)
*
.model BC337 NPN(Is=3.108f Xti=3 Eg=1.11 Vaf=131.5 Bf=217.5 Ne=1.54
                                    Ise=190.7f Ikf=1.296 Xtb=1.5 Br=6.18 Nc=2 Isc=0 Ikr=0 Rc=
                                    Cjc=14.57p Vjc=.75 Mjc=.3333 Fc=.5 Cje=26.08p Vje=.75
                                    Mje=.3333 Tr=51.35n Tf=451p Itf=.1 Vtf=10 Xtf=2)
*
.model BC327 PNP(Is=9.913f Xti=3 Eg=1.11 Vaf=90.7 Bf=197.8 Ne=2.264
Ise=6.191p Ikf=.7322 Xtb=1.5 Br=3.369 Nc=2 Isc=0 Ikr=0 Rc
Cjc=14.57p Vjc=.75 Mjc=.3333 Fc=.5 Cje=20.16p Vje=. 75
Mje=.3333 Tr=29.17n Tf=405.6p Itf=.4 Vtf=10 Xtf=2)
```

* 

.model BC637 NPN(Is=3.108f Xti=3 Eg=1.11 Vaf=131.5 Bf=217.5 Ne=1.541 Ise=190.7f $\operatorname{Ikf}=1.296 \mathrm{Xtb}=1.5 \mathrm{Br}=6.18 \mathrm{Nc}=2 \mathrm{Isc}=0$ Ikr=0 Rc=1 Cjc $=14.57 \mathrm{p}$ Vjc $=.75 \mathrm{Mjc}=.3333 \mathrm{Fc}=.5 \mathrm{Cje}=26.08 \mathrm{p}$ Vje=. 75 Mje=. 3333 Tr=51.35n Tff=451p Itf=.1 Vtf=10 Xtf=2)
.model BC638 PNP(Is=9.913f Xti=3 Eg=1.11 Vaf=90.7 Bf=197.8 Ne=2.264 $+\quad$ Ise=6.191p Ikf=. $7322 \mathrm{Xtb}=1.5 \mathrm{Br}=3.369 \mathrm{Nc}=2 \mathrm{Isc}=0 \mathrm{Ikr}=0 \mathrm{Rc}=1$
$+\quad \mathrm{Cjc}=14.57 \mathrm{p}$ Vjc=. $75 \mathrm{Mjc}=.3333 \mathrm{Fc}=.5 \mathrm{Cje}=20.16 \mathrm{p}$ Vje=. 75 $+\quad$ Mje=. 3333 Tr=29.17n Tf=405.6p Itf=. 4 Vtf=10 Xtf=2)
.model VN2222 PMOS(Level=3 Gamma=0 Delta=0 Eta=0 Theta=0 Kappa=0 $+\mathrm{Tox}=100 \mathrm{n} \mathrm{Uo}=600 \mathrm{Phi}=.6 \mathrm{Rs}=5.724 \mathrm{~m} \mathrm{Kp}=.6 \mathrm{u} \mathrm{W}=.015 \mathrm{~L}=.1 \mathrm{u}$
$+\quad \mathrm{Vto}=-2.5 \mathrm{Rd}=364 \mathrm{~m} \mathrm{Rds}=500 \mathrm{~K} \quad \mathrm{Cbd}=.08 \mathrm{n} \mathrm{Pb}=.8 \mathrm{Mj}=.5 \mathrm{Fc}=.5$
$+\quad \mathrm{Cgso}=.18 \mathrm{n} \mathrm{Cgdo}=.032 \mathrm{n} \mathrm{Rg}=18.6 \mathrm{Is}=648.2 \mathrm{E}-18$ )
.model IRDF010 NMOS(Level=3 Gamma=0 Delta=0 Eta=0 Theta=0 Kappa=0
$+\quad T o x=100 \mathrm{n} \mathrm{Uo}=600 \mathrm{Phi}=.6 \mathrm{Rs}=5.724 \mathrm{~m} \mathrm{Kp}=20.76 \mathrm{u} \mathrm{W}=.31 \mathrm{~L}=2 \mathrm{u}$
$+\quad \mathrm{Vto}=2.75 \mathrm{Rd}=2.6 \mathrm{~m} \mathrm{Rds}=400 \mathrm{~K} \mathrm{Cbd}=.4 \mathrm{n} \mathrm{Pb}=.8 \mathrm{Mj}=.5 \mathrm{Fc}=.5$
$+\quad \mathrm{Cgso}=.9 \mathrm{n}$ Cgdo= $15 \mathrm{n} \mathrm{Rg}=5 \mathrm{Is}=648.2 \mathrm{E}-18$ )
*
.model IRFD9020 PMOS(Level=3 Gamma=0 Delta=0 Eta=0 Theta=0 Kappa=0
$+\quad$ Tox $=100 \mathrm{n} \mathrm{Uo}=300 \mathrm{Phi}=.6 \mathrm{Rs}=.1429 \mathrm{Kp}=9.899 \mathrm{u} \mathrm{W}=1.1 \mathrm{~L}=2 \mathrm{u}$ $+\quad \mathrm{Vto}=-2.75 \mathrm{Rd}=74.02 \mathrm{~m} \mathrm{Rds}=400 \mathrm{~K} \mathrm{Cbd}=.4 \mathrm{n} \mathrm{Pb}=.8 \mathrm{Mj}=.5 \mathrm{Fc}=.5$ $+\quad \mathrm{Cgso}=.9 \mathrm{n} \mathrm{Cgdo}=.15 \mathrm{n} \mathrm{Rg}=5 \mathrm{Is}=1 \mathrm{E}-30$ )
*
.MODEL D1N914 D(IS=100E-15 RS=16 CJO=2PF TT=12NS BV=100 IBV=100E-15)
*
*
.TRAN 0.01U 10u UIC
. PROBE
. END


Figure E1 IGBT Drive Module Spice Model Schematic Diagram

## APPENDIX F

## Diode $\mathrm{D}_{\mathbf{c}}$ Reverse Recovery Calculation

If the diode $D_{c}$ carriers a forward current of 25 A and the commutation $\mathrm{dI} / \mathrm{dt}$ is $39 \mathrm{~A} / \mu \mathrm{S}$ the reverse maximum current is calculated as follows using the methods of Chapter three:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{o}}=\frac{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{f}}}{\mathrm{~m}}=\frac{25}{39}=0.64 \mu \mathrm{~S} \\
& \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}=0.13 \mu \mathrm{~S} @ 125^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \\
& \frac{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{o}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}}=\frac{0.64}{0.13}=4.9
\end{aligned}
$$

From table 3.1:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}}{\mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{t}}}=5.7 \\
& \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{x}}=5.7 \times 0.13=0.741 \mu \mathrm{~S} \\
& \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{rm}}=\mathrm{m} \mathrm{~T} \\
& \quad=39 \times 0.741-25=3.9 \mathrm{~A}
\end{aligned}
$$

## APPENDIX G

## Amplifier Photographs



Figure G1 Positive Buck Converter Module


Figure G2 IGBT Gate Drive Module


Figure G3 Self Oscillating Converter Module


Figure G4 Buck Converter Test Installation and Loading Banks


Figure G5 Scale Model Test Installation and Controller PCB


Figure G6 The Amplifier during the Construction Phase


Figure G7 The Amplifier during the Construction Phase

## UNIVERSITY OF CENTRAL QUEENSLAND

## LIBRARY


Thesis Title A...g.gh. .po incr...wide ...6and.uidth.... suctich .. Mode.. empl!fiec

## AUTHOR'S DECLARATION

Authors should select one of the options set out below. Rule out the other two.

1. This Thesis may not bo copied in whole or in part without ny permission.

OR
2. Copies of up to $10 \%$ may be made for purposes of research or study or with a view to publication. OR
3. Copies of this Thesis in whole or Signature Redacted action for purposes of research or study of with a Signature Redacted action, with the Librarian's permission.

Signed ..

## READER'S DECLARATION

I have used this Thesis for purposes of research or study and agree to abide by the conditions specified above.

| Name Date | Name |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | 17557

